### 2013-1167 (Serial No. 10/378,261)

# United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit

### IN RE RAYMOND GIANNELLI

Appeal from the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Patent Trial and Appeal Board.

### JOINT APPENDIX

NATHAN K. KELLEY
DEPUTY SOLICITOR
JEREMIAH S. HELM
AMY J. NELSON
ASSOCIATE SOLICITORS
OFFICE OF THE SOLICITOR
Mail Stop 8
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313
(571) 272-9035

Counsel for Appellee, Acting Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office MICHAEL LAWRENCE OLIVERIO
NOVAK, DRUCE, CONNOLLY,
BOVE & QUIGG LLP
Suite 2101
100 Cambridge Street
Boston, Massachusetts 02114
Tel. 617-367-4600
Fax. 617-367-4656
lawrence.oliverio@novakdruce.com

Counsel for Appellant Raymond Giannelli

JULY 5, 2013

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Appendix Page

Decision of the Patent Trial and Appeal Board	A1-7
Certified List	<b>A</b> 8-9
Application as Filed March 3, 2003	10-33
Final Office Action July 18, 2006 A	81-84
Claims On Appeal, As Finally Amended and Entered April 12, 2006	.104-108
Examiner's Answer To Appeal, October 1, 2007	117-121
Published Application No. 2003/0166439 A	.163-172
Applicant's Own '447 Patent Cited As Prior Art By Patent Office, U.S. Patent No. 5,997,447	173-197
Certificate of Service	



### UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandra, Virginia 22313-1450 www.uspio.gov

A DOMESTICAL PROPERTY.	T	T		
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/378,261	03/03/2003	Raymond Giannelli	C016/7092US2	1700
RISSMAN HEI	7590 NDRICKS & OLIVER	2 IO, LLP	EXAM	INER
100 Cambridge Suite 2101	Street		DONNELLY	JEROME W
BOSTON, MA	02114		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
			3764	
			NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
			10/29/2012	ELECTRONIC

### Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

mbien-aime@rhoiplaw.com cjoseph@rhoiplaw.com info@rhoiplaw.com

### UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

### BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD

Ex parte RAYMOND GIANNELLI

Application 10/378,261 Technology Center 3700

Before JOHN C. KERINS, EDWARD A. BROWN, and BENJAMIN D. M. WOOD, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

BROWN, Administrative Patent Judge.

**DECISION ON APPEAL** 

#### STATEMENT OF THE CASE

Appellant appeals under 35 U.S.C. § 134(a) from the rejection of claims 1-25. (App. Br. 2). We have jurisdiction over this appeal under 35 U.S.C. § 6(b).

We AFFIRM.

#### THE CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER

Independent claims 1, 15, and 23 are on appeal. Claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly including a first handle portion adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.

#### THE REJECTION

Claims 1-25 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as unpatentable over Giannelli (US 5,997,447; iss. Dec. 7, 1999).

#### **ANALYSIS**

Appellant argues claims 1 and 15 as a group, and does not provide separate argument for any one of dependent claims 2-14, 16-22, 24, and 25. (App. Br. 5-10; Reply Br. 2-3). We select claim 1 as representative of the grouping, with claims 2-22, 24, and 25 standing or falling with claim 1. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 41.37(c)(1)(vii)(2011).

The Examiner found Giannelli discloses that its device is used in a pushing motion, but found that the device is also capable of being pulled by the user. (Ans. 3).<sup>2</sup> The Examiner also found that a user is not limited to, or

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> We herein refer to the Reply Brief dated May 27, 2008.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> We herein refer to the Examiner's Answer mailed May 2, 2008.

Appeal 2010-007582 Application 10/378,261

confined to, a seat when using Giannelli's device. (*Id.*). The Examiner further found that the claimed "substantially linear path" of the handle portion encompasses the slightly curvilinear (path) disclosed by Giannelli. (Ans. 4).

Appellant contends that the claims are directed to a row exercise machine that requires a pulling force (App. Br. 5-6), whereas Giannelli is directed to a chest press machine, and "[a] chest press exercise machine and motion is a different field of structure and exercise from a row machine." (App. Br. 7). Appellant further contends that Giannelli discloses that "the user *pushes* the handles through a *curvilinear path* from a chest to shoulder high rest position to a fully extended outward or forward position. This is *opposite* the presently claimed invention." (App. Br. 9).

Regarding Appellant's contention that Giannelli is not directed to a row exercise machine, the relevant issue is whether Giannelli's apparatus is capable of being used by exerting a pulling force on the handles in a rowing motion. Where the Patent and Trademark Office has reason to believe that a claimed functional limitation is an inherent characteristic of the prior art, the burden is shifted to Appellant to show that the prior art does not possess that characteristic. *See In re Best*, 562 F.2d 1252, 1254-55 (CCPA 1977) (quoting *In re Swinehart*, 439 F.2d 210, 212-13 (CCPA 1971)); *see also In re Spada*, 911 F.2d 705, 708 (Fed. Cir. 1990) ("when the PTO shows sound basis for believing that the products of the applicant and the prior art are the same, the applicant has the burden of showing that they are not.") In response to the Examiner's findings as to how Giannelli's apparatus is capable of being used, Appellant contends that Giannelli does not teach or suggest that "a user should stand on their feet and pull the arms," and that:

Appeal 2010-007582 Application 10/378,261

The entire teaching of the Giannelli '447 disclosure is precisely the opposite of what the examiner contends that it is capable doing or how it is capable of being used. Even further, if a user were to stand on their feet and pull the handles, this would defeat the very purpose of the machine and the entire teaching of the disclosure.

(Reply Br. 2). These contentions are not persuasive.

Firstly, although Giannelli does not explicitly disclose the use of its structure as a row exercise machine, the absence of disclosure in Giannelli relating to this use or function is not dispositive. Rather, "[i]t is well settled that the recitation of a new intended use for an old product does not make a claim to that old product patentable." *See In re Schreiber*, 128 F.3d 1473, 1477 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (citation omitted).

Secondly, Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument or evidence to show that Giannelli's apparatus is incapable of being used by exerting a pulling force on the handles in a rowing motion. In our view, it is reasonable to find that a user could face the handles 16a, 16b and support cushion 27 of Giannelli's apparatus and exert a pulling force on the handles 16a, 16b in a rowing motion, where the force is exerted in a direction that extends away from the support cushion 27 so as to move the handles 16a, 16b from a first position to a second position. (*See also* Giannelli, col. 4, 1. 66 – col. 5, 1. 10 and col. 5, 1l. 46-50). Although such use may not fully achieve the "purpose" of Giannelli's apparatus, Appellant has not shown that the apparatus could not be used in such manner.

Appellant also contends that the Examiner's "comment that a linear path cannot be sufficiently distinguished from a curvilinear path does not take into account any of the distinct structures or functions of the claimed

apparatus." (App. Br. 9). As noted *supra*, however, the Examiner found that the claims recite a "*substantially* linear path" (emphasis added). Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument or evidence as to why the claimed "*substantially* linear path" (emphasis added) should be construed to not encompass Giannelli's "*slightly* curvilinear path" (emphasis added). The term "substantially" allows for the first handle portion to travel in a path that deviates from a perfectly linear path. In addition, claim 1 does not recite any limitation as to how far the first handle portion must move "from the first position to the second position." It is reasonable to find that as this distance decreases for movement of the handles in Giannelli's apparatus, the path would increasingly correspond to a linear path.

Appellant also contends that Giannelli is non-analogous prior art. (App. Br. 9; Reply Br. 5). The two *separate* tests for determining whether a reference is analogous prior art for purposes of a rejection under 35 U.S.C. § 103 are: (1) whether the reference is from the same field of endeavor, regardless of the problem addressed; and (2) *if* the reference is not within the inventor's field of endeavor, whether the reference is reasonably pertinent to the particular problem with which the inventor is involved. *In re Bigio*, 381 F.3d 1320, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2004). At the least, Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument as to why Giannelli does not meet test (1). The claimed invention is directed to the field of apparatuses for exercising the upper body. (Spec. para. [0003]). Giannelli is also directed to this same field of endeavor. (*See* Giannelli, col. 1, ll. 15-17). As such, we agree that Giannelli qualifies as analogous prior art.

In view of the above, we sustain the rejection of claim 1, as well as claims 2-22, 24, and 25.

Appeal 2010-007582 Application 10/378,261

Claim 23 is directed to a row exercise machine comprising, *inter alia*, a "user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a *chest pad*." (Emphasis added). The Examiner found Giannelli's support cushion 27 meets the claim limitation of a "chest pad." (Ans. 4). Appellant contends that "[t]he purpose of the chest [pad] is to oppose the *row-pulling motion* on the handles. No such component is present or even usable in the . . . Giannelli . . . apparatus." (App. Br. 7). This contention is not persuasive.

Claim 23 does not recite any structural limitation for the claimed "chest pad" that Giannelli's support cushion 27 lacks. In addition, the claim does not specify the location of the chest pad as opposing the row-pulling motion on the handles. Unclaimed features of the row exercise machine cannot be relied upon for patentability. *See In re Self*, 671 F.2d 1344, 1348 (Fed. Cir. 1982). As Appellant has not apprised us of any error in the Examiner's findings and conclusion, we sustain the rejection of claim 23.

### **DECISION**

The Examiner's decision rejecting claims 1-25 is AFFIRMED.

No time period for taking any subsequent action in connection with this appeal may be extended under 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a). See 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a)(1)(iv).

### **AFFIRMED**

ke

Case: 13-1167 Document: 1-3 Page: 13 Filed: 01/16/2013

Form PTO 55 (12-80)

### U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office

January 16, 2013

(15 of 17)

(Date)

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that the annexed is a true copy of the Image File Wrapper (IFW) of the patent application identified below, said Contents being a list of the documents comprising the record in the United States Patent and Trademark Office in the matter of:

The Patent Application of:

Applicant: RAYMOND GIANNELLI

Serial No.: 10/378,261

File Date: March 3, 2003

Invention: ROWING MACHINE



By authority of the DIRECTOR OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Certifying Officer

macia L. Fretcher

Case: 13-1167 Document: 1-3 Page: 14 Filed: 01/16/2013 (16 of 17)

### Prosecution History for Patent Application Serial Number 10/378,261

Date	History Text
03/03/2003	Specification, Drawings, Claims, Abstract, Declaration
03/03/2003	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS)
04/16/2003	Notice to File Missing Parts of Nonprovisional Application
04/29/2003	Response to Notice to File Missing Parts of Nonprovisional Application
11/03/2003	Power of Attorney
11/12/2003	Power of Attorney
10/04/2004	Status Inquiry
12/23/2004	Change of Address
10/12/2005	Non-Final Rejection
04/17/2006	Extension of Time
04/17/2006	Response to Non-Final Rejection
07/18/2006	
01/19/2007	Extension of Time
01/19/2007	Notice of Appeal
07/16/2007	Extension of Time
07/16/2007	Appeal Brief
02/05/2008	Examiner's Answer to Appeal Brief
03/31/2008	Request for Oral Hearing
03/31/2008	Reply Brief
05/02/2008	Examiner's Answer to Appeal Brief
05/27/2008	Reply Brief
07/30/2008	Reply Brief Noted – Patent Board
09/01/2009	Order Returning Undocketed Appeal to the Examiner from Patent Board
05/17/2010	Appeal Docketing Notice
05/21/2010	Notification of Appeal Hearing
06/04/2012	Confirmation of Hearing by Appellant
06/05/2012	Confirmation of Hearing by Appellant
10/29/2012	Patent Board Decision – Examiner Affirmed
12/07/2012	Appeal to CAFC

Sir:

### VIA EXPRESS MAIL NO.: EV019280435US

Date: March 03, 2003

Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U

BOX PATENT APPLICATION Commissioner of Patent Washington, D.C. 20231



Transmitted herewith for filing is the patent application of:

	Inventor(s):	Raymond Giannelli
Enclosed	Patent application	ROWING MACHINE  (including 10 sheets of Specification; 6 sheets of Claims (Claims #1-25); 1 and 5 sheets of formal drawings (one set) (FIGS 1-5);
$\boxtimes$	Title Page for Pat	ent Application;
$\boxtimes$	Declaration and F	Power of Attorney: executed unexecuted;
$\boxtimes$	Information Disc cited reference(s)	osure Statement w/Form PTO/SB/08A (Substitute for form PTO-1449) and copies of 17;
	Assignment (w/R	ecordation Cover Sheet) of the invention to;
	Check in the amo	unt of \$ representing Assignment Recordation Fee;
	Check in the amo	unt of \$, representing filing fee based on 🖂 large entity 🗌 small entity status;
$\boxtimes$	Postcard receipt	
	Executed Request	and Certification Under 35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(i).

CLAIMS FILED: MINUS BASE:	EXTRA CLAIMS:	RATE:	BASIC FEE \$ 750.00
Independent 3 - 3		x \$ 84.00 =	\$
Total 25 - 20	5	x \$ 18.00 =	\$90.00
Multiple Dependent Claims (1st presentat	ion)	+\$280.00 =	\$
SUBTOTAL FILING FEE			\$
Small Entity filing, divide by 2.			\$
TOTAL FILING FEE			\$840.00

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any additional filing fees or credit any overpayment under §1.16 associated with this communication or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 502104.

Christopher & Weisberg, P.A. 200 East Las Olas Boulevard – Suite 2040 Ft. Lauderdale, Florida 33301 5302 Reg. No. 37,596/ Autorney for Applicant Customer No.: 31292 Telephone: (954) 828-1488

OHN CHRISTO

### **APPLICATION**

**FOR** 

### UNITED STATES LETTERS PATENT

TITLE OF INVENTION

### **ROWING MACHINE**

Inventor(s):

Raymond Giannelli

CHRISTOPHER & WEISBERG, P.A. 200 East Las Olas Boulevard, Suite 2040 Fort Lauderdale, Florida 33301 Telephone: (954) 828-1488 Facsimile: (954) 828-9122

Express Mail Label No.: EV019280435US Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U

### CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

[0001] This application is related to and claims priority to U.S. Provisional Patent Application Serial No. 60/361,622, filed March 04, 2002, entitled ROWING MACHINE, the entirety of which is incorporated herein by reference.

STATEMENT REGARDING FEDERALLY SPONSORED RESEARCH OR DEVELOPMENT

[0002] n/a

#### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[0003] The present invention relates to the field of exercise and physical rehabilitation equipment, and in particular to an apparatus for exercising the upper body.

#### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[0004] It is often necessary or desirable for a person to exercise a particular muscle or group of muscles. For example, when a muscle is damaged, such as through injury or surgery, it is important to exercise the muscle to prevent atrophy and to strengthen the muscle for normal use. Further, people exercise healthy muscles to increase strength and to maintain an active and healthy lifestyle, as well as to improve their appearance. Various routines have been developed to exercise different muscle groups by forcing the muscles to contract and extend under a load, such as by moving a free weight against the force of gravity or by moving a handle whose movement is resisted by an exercise machine.

[0005] One such exercise is known as a row exercise, where the latisimus dorsi muscles are exercised. An exerciser lies prone on a bench, or bends at the waist, and grasps a barbell below him. The exerciser then pulls the barbell towards his torso and lowers it down. This exercise can be dangerous as the exerciser may drop the barbell. Additionally, as the arms are drawn towards

1

the torso, it is difficult to keep them low enough with respect to the trunk to involve the latisimus effectively. If the user pulls the bar towards the chest, the ability of the latisimus dorsi muscles to move the resistance decreases.

[0006] Furthermore, the exerciser should have a partner to spot him in case he fails to lift the weight. Even if done properly with a partner, this exercise may not permit the user a full range of exercise since the barbell may hit the user's chest before the back muscles have contracted fully. When using free weights, the resistance provided by gravity is constant while the strength of the muscles varies over the range of motion. Consequently, the muscles are not fully loaded at each point over the range.

[0007] To overcome these difficulties, machines have been developed that simulate the exercise movements of a row/rear deltoid exercise. In one apparatus, disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,620,402, a user exercises by pulling handles toward his torso. A seat and chest pad are mounted to a frame to position a user. Arms are rotatably mounted to the frame. The handles are mounted to the arms. The pivot for the arms is disposed above the seat. A cable operably connects the arms to a weight stack such that when a user pulls back on the handles, thereby rotating the arms, the weight stack is lifted and provides resistance to the exercise. The cable may be journaled over a variable radius cam to alter the distance the weight is displaced for a given amount of handle rotation at a particular point in the range of motion. Consequently, the resistance to the movement of the handles can be varied to match the strength curve of the back muscles. Unfortunately, the combination of row and rear deltoid exercise requires compromise for both patterns. The rear deltoid exercise is best performed in a transverse plane. The row exercise is best performed in the sagittal plane. Most row/rear deltoid machines do not have

enough vertical motion at the grip to allow for the full range of sagittal plane motion required to do the exercise correctly.

[0008] In another apparatus, disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,135,456, a rowing machine is disclosed in which levers are rotatably mounted to a frame. Handles are mounted to the levers. Resistance to handle movement exercise is provided by weight plates mounted to the levers. The hinges for the levers are disposed at diverging angles with respect to a central vertical midplane, such that the user moves his hands in defined arcs in diverging planes as he pulls back on the handles. This apparatus forces the user's hands to be spread apart as the handles are drawn back toward the chest. The diverging motion is successful in greater engagement of the rear deltoid due to it's greater degree of transverse plane motion, but does not allow for enough vertical motion in the sagittal plane to do the row in a way that effectively engages the latisimus dorsi over the greatest range of motion.

[0009] It is object of this invention to provide an exercise machine which optimally isolates the latisimus muscle group to maximize muscular benefit during performance of a row movement.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0010] The subject invention provides a rowing exercise machine with a substantially linear pattern of motion while offering a variable resistance throughout the range of motion of the muscles being trained. The exercise machine includes an input assembly which enables a user to maintain biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise, while maintaining a consistent resistance applied to the muscles, in the stability of an exercise machine. The input assembly is engagable by a user, where the input assembly defines a declining, substantially linear path as the input assembly is moved from a first position to a

second position. A user engages the input assembly in the first position, where the user's arms and forearms are substantially parallel to a horizontal plane define by the ground.

[0011] In an exemplary embodiment, the input assembly includes a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame. The pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and a handle operatively associated with both the primary and secondary lever arms. The primary axes are disposed at an angle with respect to the frame such that the handles travel in diverging planes as the handles are drawn back.

the secondary lever arms, so as to travel in declining, substantially linear paths as the handles are drawn back. The declining, substantially linear path enables the user to maintain the proper biomechanical alignment of the force angle being applied to the grip. This allows for a fairly consistent torque application at the shoulder thoughout the range of motion of the exercise. The use of the four bar linkage allows for an insignificant change in angle of the grip throughout the range even though the primary and secondary levers go through a significant change in angle during the same range of motion. This has the effect of allowing the user to maintain proper alignment of the wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise. "Proper" or "correct biomechanical positioning," as used herein, means that the force angle applied to the grip and the orientation of the user's wrist and forearm remains relatively constant from the start to finish of a row exercise motion, i.e., throughout a complete range of motion.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

- [0013] A more complete understanding of the present invention, and the attendant advantages and features thereof, will be more readily understood by reference to the following detailed description when considered in conjunction with the accompanying drawings wherein:
- [0014] FIG. 1 is a schematic representation of the exercise machine of the present invention;
- [0015] FIG. 2 is a rear perspective view of the row exercise machine of the present invention;
- [0016] FIG. 3 is a top view of the row exercise machine of the present invention;
- [0017] FIG. 4 is a left side view of the row exercise machine of the present invention; and
- [0018] FIG. 5 is a right side view of the row exercise machine of the present invention.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0019] The subject invention provides a rowing exercise machine with a substantially linear range of motion while offering a consistent application of torque throughout the range of motion of the shoulder joint. The exercise machine includes an input assembly which enables a user to maintain biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise, while maintaining a consistent torque applied to the shoulder joint, in the stability of an exercise machine.

[0020] Referring to FIG. 1, the input assembly 2 defines a substantially linear path "P", wherein the input assembly 2 travels to the nadir of the substantially linear path "P" when the input assembly 2 is moved from a first position "F1" to a second position "F2." Similarly, the input assembly 2 travels to the apex of the substantially linear path "P" when the input assembly 2 is the moved from the second position "F2" to the first position "F1." The input assembly is

configured to keep the user's forearms substantially parallel to the ground as the input assembly travel along the substantially linear path "P."

[0021] In an exemplary embodiment, as shown in FIG. 2, the exercise machine 10 of the present invention includes a support frame 12 having a front leg 14, rear base 16, and a vertical support 18. A seat 20 is mounted to the front leg 14 of the support frame 12. The seat 20 is adapted to be positioned at various heights along the front leg 14 to provide a comfortable position for users of varying stature. A chest pad 22 is mounted on the front leg 14 above the seat 20 by a chest pad rod 24. In an exemplary embodiment, the front leg 14 angles away from the seat 20 in an upward direction where the chest pad 22 is disposed forward of the seat 20. The chest pad rod 24 may be of an adjustable length, such as by means of a telescoping rod held in position by a pin/detent connection 26. The adjustable-length chest pad rod 24 allows users of varying stature to be positioned at different distances from the machine, thereby permitting a full range of motion. Foot braces 28 are mounted to the bottom of the support frame 10 and are disposed in front of the seat 20. The foot braces 28, seat 20 and chest pad 22 comprise the user support adapted to maintain the user in a comfortable, stable position for exercising.

Referring to FIGS. 2 and 3, the input assembly includes four bar linkage mechanisms 30a and 30b pivotally mounted at the distal ends to an upper support frame 36. Four bar linkages 30a and 30b are symmetrical in construction, therefore, the below detailed description of linkage 30a is applicable to symmetrical linkage 30b as well. Four bar linkage 30a includes primary lever arm 32a, a secondary lever arm 34a, and a handle 38a. The primary lever arm 32a and secondary lever arm 34a lie and travel in a common plane which minimally diverges from a vertical midplane "A" as the primary lever 32a and the secondary lever 34a are drawn back in the direction of arrow "C", where vertical midplane "A" longitudinally bisects the seat 20. The

divergence of the common plane is sufficient to allow the handles 38a and 38b to pass on opposite sides of the user.

[0023] The primary lever arm 32a is an elongated bar which is pivotally connected at its proximal end to the handle 38a. The distal end of the primary lever arm 32a is pivotally connected to the upper support frame 36 by primary axle 42a disposed about primary axis 44a.

[0024] Secondary lever arm 34a is similarly an elongated bar which is pivotally connected at its proximal end to handle 38a, and is pivotally connected at its distal end to the upper support frame 38 by secondary axle 48a. The secondary axle 48a is axially disposed about secondary axis 50a. The primary axis 44a is disposed at an angle  $\alpha$  with respect to a horizontal plane "B".

[0025] In an exemplary embodiment, the secondary axles 50a and 50b are spaced from and are parallel to the primary axles 44a and 44b.

linkage 30a. The handle 38a includes a first handle portion 52 and a second handle portion 54 curving upwardly from the first portion 52, at about, for example, a 120-degree angle. The relationship of the primary lever arm 32a with the secondary lever arm 34a is in an unequal length configuration. The unequal lengths force the handle 38a to tilt downwardly as the primary lever arm 32a moves from a first position to a second position. The effect this has is to cause grip 54 to mover in a substantially linear path defined as "P" even though the primary lever arm 32a is restricted to an arcuate path of motion. The angular displacement of the handle 38a, with respect to the ground plane, that is required to maintain a substantially linear path "P" is small in magnitude. The small angular displacement of the handle 38a helps maintains the grip 54 in a substantially vertical position. This enables the user to maintain the proper biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forcarm during performance of the exercise. "Proper" or

"correct biomechanical positioning," as used herein, means that the orientation of the user's wrist and forearm remains relatively constant from the start to finish of a row exercise motion, i.e., throughout a complete range of motion.

[0027] Additionally, a stop plate 46 is mounted onto the vertical support 18, where the stop plate 46 engages secondary lever arm 34a when the exercise machine 10 is not in use. The stop plate 46 limits the rearward movement of four bar linkages 30a and 30b in the direction of arrow "E."

[0028] In an exemplary embodiment, as shown in FIG. 5, a weight stack frame 56 is attached to the support frame 12 by beams 58a and 58b, where the weight stack 60 is easily accessed by a user seated in seat 20. Connection bridges 62a and 62b (See also FIG. 4) are rigidly mounted to the front leg 14 and the weight stack frame 56, respectively. The bridges 62A and 62b support a transmission 64, including a shaft 66, a first cam 68 and a second cam 70. (See also FIG. 2) A weight stack pulley set 72a and 72b is mounted to the top of the weight stack frame 56, with pulley 72a aligned with the first cam 52 and pulley 72b aligned with the weight stack 60. Guide rods 74 are mounted vertically within the weight stack frame 56. The weight stack 60 is glidingly mounted to the guide rods 74 and provides a resistance to the exercise.

[0029] In alternative embodiments, other mechanisms for providing resistance, such as friction fitting, springs, elastic bands, hydraulic, pneumatic or electromagnetic resistance, or an air resistance fan could be employed (either alone or in combination) and still practice the invention. Additionally, free weights could be operable engaged to the four-bar linkage 30a and 30b to resist the movement.

[0030] In an embodiment, as shown in FIGS. 2-5, the handles 38a and 38b are operably connected to the weight stack 60 via the transmission system 64. A pair of frame pulleys 76 are

mounted to the vertical support 18 of the support frame 12. A lifting pulley 78 is operably connected to the handles 38a and 38b by a first cable 80, wherein the first cable 80 is threaded about and through the pair of frame pulleys 76, such that the lifting pulley 78 is positioned above the second cam 70. A lifting cable 82 connects the lifting pulley 78 to the second cam 70, where the second cam 70 is caused to rotate when at least one of the handles 38a or 38b is pulled back.

[0031] A belt 84 is attached at one end to the first cam 68, extending over the weight stack pulleys 72a and 72b and attached to the weight stack 60 at the opposite end. (See also FIG. 5). As the user pulls back on the handles 38a and 38b, the lifting pulley 78 is raised, causing the lifting cable 80 to unwind and rotate the second cam 70. As the second cam 70 rotates, the shaft 66 and the first cam 68 rotate as well. The rotation of the first cam 68 pulls the belt 84 over the weight stack pulleys 72a and 72b, and thus lifts the weight stack 60.

[0032] In an exemplary method of operation, a weight is selected on the main weight stack 60 by placing a pin (not shown) in one of the holes, as is known in the art. The user adjusts the seat 20 and chest pad 22 to a suitable position on the front leg 14. For example, a user with a longer torso will adjust the seat to a lower height such that the handles 38a and 38b are positioned at a comfortable height parallel with the users shoulders. The chest pad 22 is adjusted such that when the user grasps the handles tension is placed on the lifting cable 80. The user grasps the handles 38a and 38b and pulls back causing the lifting pulley 78 to be raised. As the lifting pulley 78 is raised, the first cam 70, shaft 66, and second cam 68 rotate, pulling on the belt 84 and lifting the selected weight. The user then returns the handles 38a and 38b to the initial position, thereby lowering the weight. When the user pulls the handles 38a and 38b back, the resistance provided by the weight is overcome. When the user returns the handles 38a and 38b, the user succumbs to the resistance provided by the weight.

[0033] It will be appreciated by persons skilled in the art that the present invention is not limited to what has been particularly shown and described herein above. In addition, unless mention was made above to the contrary, it should be noted that all of the accompanying drawings are not to scale. A variety of modifications and variations are possible in light of the above teachings without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention, which is limited only by the following claims.

### What is claimed is:

- 1. A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly including a first handle portion adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.
- 2. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 3. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 4. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a frame, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame.
- 5. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 4, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame forward and above a user.
- 6. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 7. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein the first handle portion is substantially vertically oriented.
- 8. The exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein, the first handle portion travels to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion travels to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.
- 9. The exercise machine according to claim 8, further comprising a second handle portion operatively connected to the input assemble, the second handle portion traveling to the nadir of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the first position to the second position and the second handle portion traveling to the apex of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.
- 10. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the forearms of a user remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.

- 11. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 12. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 13. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.
- 14. The exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a user support structure including:
  - a seat mounted to the frame; and
  - a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.

15. A row exercise machine comprising:

a frame;

an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of a user, the input assembly including a first handle portion and a second handle portion and defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion and the second handle portion from a first position to a second position; and

a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 16. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 17. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 18. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.

- 19. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are substantially vertically oriented.
- 20. The exercise machine according to claim15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the user's forearms remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved.
- 21. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.
- 22. The row exercise machine according to claim 15, further comprising a user support structure including:
  - a seat mounted to the frame; and
  - a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.

23. A row exercise machine comprising:

a frame;

position.

user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a chest pad;

an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of the seat, the input assembly including a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each having a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis,

a pair of handle portions operably operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms and defining a substantially linear path when moved from a first position to a second position, wherein the pair of handle portions travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position and the pair of handle portions travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position; and a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 24. The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in
- diverging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second
- 25. The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in converging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position.

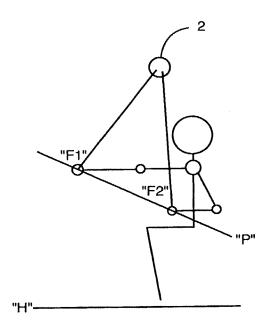
#### ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A rowing exercise machine provides a declining, substantially linear path of motion while offering a consistent force angle at the grip. This allows for a fairly consistent torque application at the shoulder joint, throughout the range of motion of the exercise. The exercise machine includes an input assembly which enables a user to maintain biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise, while maintaining a consistent torque applied to the shoulder joint, in the stability of an exercise machine. The input assembly defines a declining, substantially linear path, where the user's forearms remain substantially parallel to the ground as the input assembly is drawn back.

5299

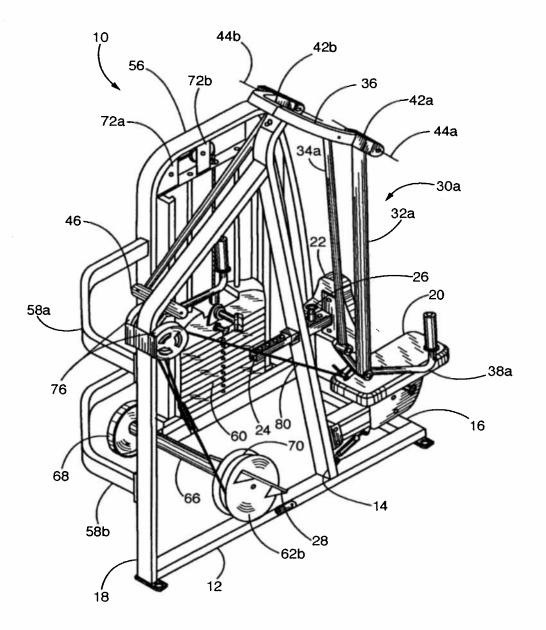
1/5

## 1/5 FIG. 1



United States Patent Application Entitled: ROWING MACHINE Filed: Herewith Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U

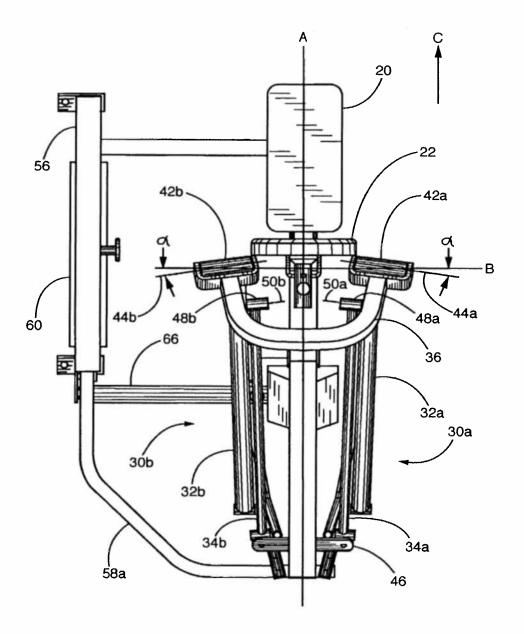
2/5 **FIG. 2** 



United States Patent Application Entitled: ROWING MACHINE Filed: Herewith

Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U

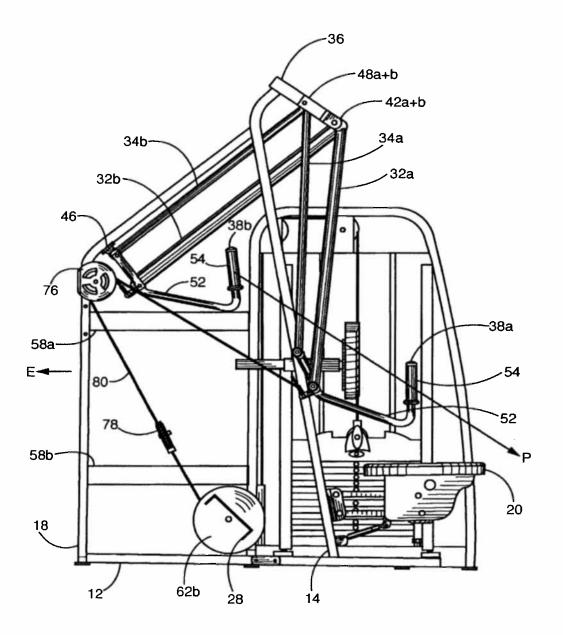
3/5 *FIG. 3* 



United States Patent Application Entitled: ROWING MACHINE Filed: Herewith

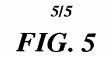
Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U

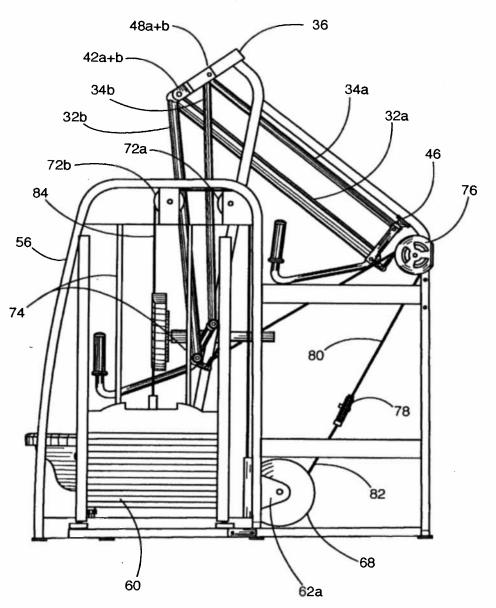
4/5 FIG. 4



United States Patent Application Entitled: ROWING MACHINE Filed: Herewith

Attorney Docket No.: 23555-92U







### UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO
10/378,261	03/03/2003	Raymond Giannelli	23555-92U	1700
21127 7	590 10/12/2005		EXAM	INER
	JOBSE, LLP		DONNELLY,	JEROME W
ONE STATE STREET SUITE 800			ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
BOSTON, MA	A 02109		3764	
			DATE MAILED: 10/12/200	5

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

(	2	r
_1	) :	,

		Application No.	Applicant(s)	
	Office Assistant Occurrence	10/378,261	GIANNELLI, RAY	MOND
	Office Action Summary	Examiner	Art Unit	
		Jerome W. Donnelly	3764	
Period fo	The MAILING DATE of this communicat or Reply			I
WHIC - Exter after - If NO - Failui Any r	ORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR CHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAIL sions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 six (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communical period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutor re to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, the pely received by the Office later than three months after the patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).	CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a stition.  y period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MO by statute, cause the application to become A	reply be timely filed INTHS from the mailing date of this (ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133).	
Status				
1)	Responsive to communication(s) filed or	n		
	•	This action is non-final.		
	Since this application is in condition for	allowance except for formal ma	tters, prosecution as to th	e merits is
,	closed in accordance with the practice u			
Dispositi	on of Claims			
4)[2]	Claim(s) $\frac{\sqrt{-25}}{}$ is/are pending in the ap	plication.		
. ,	4a) Of the above claim(s) is/are w	vithdrawn from consideration.		
	Claim(s)is/are allowed.			
6)	Claim(s) <u>1-25</u> is/are rejected.			
7)	Claim(s) is/are objected to.			
8)	Claim(s) are subject to restriction	and/or election requirement.	•	
Applicati	on Papers			
9)	The specification is objected to by the Ex	xaminer.		
10)	The drawing(s) filed on is/are: a)	☐ accepted or b)☐ objected to	by the Examiner.	
	Applicant may not request that any objection	n to the drawing(s) be held in abeya	ance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).	
	Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the			
11)	The oath or declaration is objected to by	the Examiner. Note the attache	ed Office Action or form P	TO-152.
Priority (	ınder 35 U.S.C. § 119			
•	Acknowledgment is made of a claim for All b) Some * c) None of:  1. Certified copies of the priority doc		§ 119(a)-(d) or (f).	
	2. Certified copies of the priority doc		Application No.	
	3. Copies of the certified copies of the			l Stage
	application from the International			0.030
* 5	See the attached detailed Office action for		ot received.	
`		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
	Dul	JEROME W. DONNEL PRIMARY EXAMINE	LLY ER	
Attachmen	• •	A) [] Into-decision	Summany /PTO 412\	
2) Notic	ce of References Cited (PTO-892) ce of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO- mation Disclosure Statement's) (PTO-1449 or PTO er No(s)/Mail Date	948) Paper No	v Summary (PTO-413) o(s)/Mail Date f Informal Patent Application (P	ГО-152)
,	<u> </u>	· <del></del>		

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTOL-326 (Rev. 7-05) Application/Control Number: 10/378,261

Art Unit: 3764

The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless -

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

Claims 1-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as being anticipated by Giannelli et al (447).

Giannelli et al anticipates all of the claims of the application as broadly claimed.

Giannelli et al discloses a device including, 4-bar linkages, first and second handles, which travel in diverging planes as the first and second handle portion are moved from a first position to a second position, said first and second handle mounted to the frame forward and above, a user, a resistance mechanism, said handle being vertically oriented, a seat; and,

Wherein a users forearms remain substantially parallel to a supporting surface as the handles are moved.

As to applicants claims of a chest pad, element (27) meets this language.

As to applicants claims of substantially linear. The abstract of Giannelli et al meet said language in the language of slightly curvilinear. Neither of these limitations meet the rigid limitation of 100% linear.

Applicants claims of forward in claim 1 is relative to the orientation of the user.

The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure. Note the overall device of Giannelli et al 6,254,516, Ellis, Giannelli et al 6,071,216 Ish, III and Randolph.

Application/Control Number: 10/378,261 Page 3

Art Unit: 3764

Any inquiry concerning this communication should be directed to Jerome Donnelly at telephone number (571) 272-4975.

Jerome Donnelly

A000064

PTO/SB/08A (10-01)

Approved for use through 10/31/2002. OMB 0651-0031 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a void OM

Substitute f	or form	1449A/PTO				Complete if Known							
						Application	Number	Not yet Ass	igned		7		
INFOR	MAT	ION DIS	CLOS	URE		Filing Date		Herewith			1		
		IT BY A				First Named	Inventor	Raymond G	iiannelli	<del>- 1</del>			
( a		haata aa -				Art Unit		Not yet Ass	igned		* *		
luse es u	iany s	heets as n	ecessary	"		Examiner Na	ime	Not yet Ass	igned	·			
Sheet		1	of	T		Attorney Doc	ket Number	23555-92U					
			1	-l	U.S. PATE	NT DOCUMEN	TS	<u> </u>		·····			
Examiner Initials •	Cite No.1	Documen Number- K	t Number (ind Code <sup>2</sup> (	i/known)		Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Paten Applicant of Cit Document		Where Rel Passages	or Relevant			
		US-5,13	5,449		·····	08/04/1992	G.A. Jones		Figures Ac	pear			
		US-5,13	5,458			08/04/1992	G.A. Jones						
T.		US-5,27	3,505			12/28/1993	G.A. Jones						
		US-5,30	4,107			04/19/1994	A.A. Jones						
9		US-5,43	7,589			08/01/1995	T.J. Habing						
		US-5,62	0,402			04/15/1997	R. Simonson						
		US-5,70	7,323			01/13/1998	R. Simonson						
		US-5,76	9,757			01/23/1998	K. Fulks						
		US-5,98				11/23/1999	R. Giannelli, e	et al.	<u> </u>				
		US-5,97				10/26/1999	R. Giannelli, e	et al.					
_4_		US-5,99				12/07/1999	R. Giannelli, e	et al.					
_4		US-6,05				05/02/2000	R. Giannelli, e						
1		US-6,07				08/06/2000	R. Giannelli, e				<del></del>		
		US-6,14				11/07/2000	R. Glannelli, e	et al.					
		US-6,15				11/28/2000	R. Giannelli, e	et al.			-		
		US-6,20				03/20/2001	G.A. Jones						
		US-6,25	4,516 B1			07/03/2001	R. Giannelli, e	t al.					

			FORE	GN PATEN	DOC	UMENTS					
Examiner	Cite	Foreign	Patent Document	Publication MM-DD-Y		Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited	Peges, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant				
initials	No.'	Country Code <sup>3 - Number 4</sup> Kind Code * (If known)				Document	Figures Appear				
			}								
		1		<del></del>				-			
Examiner	Signatu	TIP CALL		ر کند	Da	ate Considered	9-30-8	1			
			)								

<sup>\*</sup>EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance

6613

<sup>\*</sup>EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

\*Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). \*See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP901.04. \*

\*Inter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). \*For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. \*FixInd of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST. 16 if possible. \*Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached. Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 2.0 hours to complete. Time will very depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TC: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

# Notice of References Cited

Application/Control No.

10/378,261

Examiner

Jerome W. Donnelly

Applicant(s)/Patent Under
Reexamination
GIANNELLI, RAYMOND

Art Unit
Page 1 of 1

### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
5	Α	US-5,486,150	01-1996	Randolph, Lucian	482/133
	В	US-5,336,148	08-1994	Ish, III, Arthur B.	482/98
	С	US-6,071,216	06-2000	Giannelli et al.	482/100
	D	US-6,682,466	01-2004	Ellis, Patrick D.	482/142
	E	US-6,254,516	07-2001	Giannelli et al.	482/100
	F	US-5,997,447	12-1999	Giannelli et al.	482/100
	G	US-			
	н	US-			
	ı	US-			
	J	US-			
	К	US-			
	L	US-			
	М	US-			

### FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N			3		,
	0					
	Р					
	Q					
	R					
	s				,	
	Т					

#### NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	U	
	٧	
	w	`
	x	

A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).) Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTO-892 (Rev. 01-2001)

**Notice of References Cited** 

Part of Paper No. 2

	Ir	ıde	X	of	CI	air	ns	

Application/Control No	
------------------------	--

10/378,261

Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination

GIANNELLI, RAYMOND Art Unit

Examiner

Jerome W. Donnelly

3764

Rejected Allowed

_	(Through numeral) Cancelled
+	Restricted

Non-Elected Ν Interference

Appeal Α 0 Objected

						j			<u></u>								j	L	<u> </u>					]
Cla	aim				Dat	e				]	Cla	aim				ı	Date	9				]	CI	air
Final	Original	9									Final	Original											Final	
	1 4	W		T				Г		1		51								$\vdash$		1		1
	2	IX		Π						]		52										1		1
	3	W								]		53										]		1
	4	U										54					Ŀ					]		
	5	V	$oldsymbol{\perp}$	丄	L	L		L	L	1		55										]		<u></u>
	6	V						<u> </u>				56												1
	7	U.	_	┖	1_	_		_	_	1		57				<u></u>				L	L	1		1
	8	V	_	<u> </u>	L	L	_	_	_	1		58			L		_				<u> </u>			L
	9	0	1	↓_	┞	<u> </u>	<u></u>	_	<u> </u>	1		59	Ш						<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	1		1
-	10	V	_	↓_	↓_	<u> </u>	_	_	<del> </del>	1	ļ	60				<u> </u>			_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1		L
	11	V	+-	╀-	╀-	-	ļ	-	-	-		61	-			ļ	<u> </u>			ـ	<u> </u>	1		H
-	12	V	+	+	┼	-		-	-	1		62	$\vdash$			├	-	-	<u> </u>	├	<u> </u>	1	ļ	1
-	13	U	+-	+-	$\vdash$	├	⊢	-	├-	1		63 64	$\vdash$			<u> </u>	-	├	-	├-	-	ł	<del> </del>	1
-	15	u	+	╁	╆╾	-	├	├-	╁	1		65	$\vdash$			├	-	-		├-	-	ł		1
-	16	v	╁	╁	╁	├	├	╁	╁	1	-	66	$\vdash$	-	_	├	-	-	-	⊢	$\vdash$	ł		1
-	17	u	+	╁	┼──	<del> </del>	┢	┢	┢	1		67	H	-		-	-	-	-	┢	-	ł		1
-	18	u	+	+	+	╁	┢┈	H	<del> </del>	1	-	68	Н		-	$\vdash$	-	-	-	├─	-	l		1
	19	u	+	+-	$\vdash$		<del> </del>	╁	$\vdash$	1	-	69	Н		-	-	_	-	-	╁	<del>                                     </del>	1		1
	20	1	1	T	1	<u> </u>		T	$\vdash$	1		70	П	-		_	<del>                                     </del>	_	_	$\vdash$	_	1		1
	21	4	T	1	T			T	1	1		71				$\vdash$		_		Т		1		1
	22	V	T	T	T	T				1		72						$\vdash$		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1		1
	23	V	Т	Γ	T				Π	1		73								Г		1		1
	24	V.								]		74								Г		1		1
	25	V	Ι							]		75										1		1
	26					L		L	L	1		76												1
	27		1	_	L	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	L_	1		77	Ш							_	_			1
ļ	28	$oldsymbol{oldsymbol{oldsymbol{eta}}}$	_	1	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1		78	Ш				_	L	L					_1
ļ	29		╄	_	<del> </del>	<u> </u>	_	<u> </u>	L_	4		79								<u> </u>				1
	30	$\vdash$	┿	ـ	↓_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	-		80	-						<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>			1
	31		+-	┼	┼	├-	_	<del> </del>	<del> </del>	-		81	$\vdash$		-	<u> </u>	-			├	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	1
	32 33	$\vdash$	+-	╁	⊢	├	_	├-	-	1		82 83	$\vdash$		_		-				-			1
-	34	$\vdash \vdash$	+	+-	+	$\vdash$	$\vdash$	-	-	1		84	$\vdash \vdash$	-		-	$\vdash$	$\vdash$		-	├	1	<u> </u>	1
<del> </del>	35	<del>                                     </del>	+-	$\vdash$	╁	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	<del> </del>	-	1	-	85				<del> </del>		-	-	-	├─	1	<del> </del>	+
-	36	+	+	$\vdash$	+-	<del>                                     </del>	-	$\vdash$	-	1	<del></del>	86	$\vdash \vdash$			-	<del>                                     </del>	-	<u> </u>	-	├	1	<del> </del>	1
<b>—</b>	37	++	T	t	t	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	1		87	$\vdash \vdash$	-					-	<del>                                     </del>	_	l	<del>                                     </del>	1
	38			†	$\vdash$	-	_		<del>                                     </del>	1		88	H		_				<del> </del>	<del> </del>	_	ĺ		1
	39		+	1	1	_		_	┢	1		89	$\vdash$						_	<del>                                     </del>	_			1
	40		1	$\top$		$\vdash$			$\vdash$	1		90				_							ļ	1
	41			T						1		91					·							1
	42		$oxed{\Box}$							]		92								L				1
	43		I									93										]		1
	44	$\Box$								]		94												1
	45											95												1
	46				L	<u> </u>				1		96												1
	47		_	1	_	_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	L			97	$oxed{oxed}$											1
<u> </u>	48		1	$\vdash$	┡	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	_		$\Box$	98						L			_			1
	49	<b>  -</b>	╀	<del> </del>	_			_	<u> </u>	1		99				Ш	L			<u> </u>	L		L	1
1	50			1	l		L	L		1		100	1							1	1		l	1

Cli	aim	Г				Date	e			
			<u> </u>							П
<u> </u>	in a									
Final	Original	İ							l	
-	0									
<b></b>	101	-	_	_			<del>                                     </del>		<del> </del>	H
<b></b>	102	-	<del>                                     </del>	├──			$\vdash$	<del> </del>	_	Н
<b></b> -	101 102 103	$\vdash$	┢	-			<del>                                     </del>	_	-	$\vdash$
	104	<u> </u>	<b> </b>	<del>                                     </del>			$\vdash$	$\vdash$	$\vdash$	Н
	105	┪	<del> </del>	_		-	<del> </del>	_		$\vdash$
	106	_	┢	_		$\vdash$	_	<del> </del>	-	Н
	107	_	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>		-	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	-	-
	108	┢	Г	<u> </u>			<del>                                     </del>	_	_	
	109		_	_				_		
	110	┢	$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>			<u> </u>	<del>                                     </del>		
	111		<b> </b>	<b></b>			<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$		
	112		<u> </u>	-	_	_	<del> </del>			
	112 113		$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>		<b>-</b>	$\vdash$	-	<del>                                     </del>	
	114		<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>		$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	_	
	114 115		<del>                                     </del>	_	<del>                                     </del>		<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	
	116		$\vdash$		<b>-</b>		_	_		H
	117	<u> </u>	<del>                                     </del>	<u> </u>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$	<u> </u>	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	$\vdash$
	118	<b> </b>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$		М	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$
	119	$\vdash$	_	$\vdash$			<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	<del>                                     </del>	
	120	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<u> </u>		<del>                                     </del>		<b> </b>	<del>                                     </del>	
	121	$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$		$\vdash$	_	<u> </u>	$\vdash$
<b></b>	121 122	$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>		Н	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	-	
	123	<b></b>	<b> </b>	_			_		-	
	123 124 125 126	<u> </u>	<del> </del>	_	<b>-</b>		$\vdash$		_	
	125		-	_			┢			
	126			_	_		_			
	127		_	-	-		_	-		
	128		_	_		_		-	_	Н
	128 129		-	-			-	-	-	
	130	-	-	-		_	-	-	-	
	130 131		-		-		-	-	-	-
	132		<u> </u>		$\vdash$		<del> </del>	<del> </del>	$\vdash$	$\vdash$
	133		<del> </del>				$\vdash$	-	<b>-</b>	$\vdash$
	134		<del> </del>	<del> </del>	$\vdash$	<del>  </del>	<del> </del>		<del> </del>	$\vdash$
	135	-	_	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	_	<del>                                     </del>	-	$\vdash$	H
	136	_	_	<del> </del>		$\vdash$	<del> </del>	<del> </del>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$
	137		_	<del>                                     </del>	<b>-</b>		$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	_	H
	138		_	<u> </u>	_		$\vdash$	<del> </del>		Н
	139	_		<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$		<del> </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$
	140	_	_	<del>                                     </del>	<b></b>	$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	-	$\vdash$	$\vdash \vdash$
	141			<u> </u>			<b></b> -	<del> </del>		H
	142			$\vdash$		_	<u> </u>	_	<del>                                     </del>	Н
	143			_	_		$\vdash$	_	<del>                                     </del>	$\vdash$
	144	_		_		_		_	_	$\vdash \dashv$
	145			<del>                                     </del>		_	_	-	-	Н
	146			-			<u> </u>			H
	147		<del>                                     </del>	····	Н	$\vdash$	_	-		H
	148		<del></del>	<del></del>		$\vdash$	-	-	-	$\vdash \vdash$
	149	-		<u> </u>	Н		<del> </del>	-	-	$\vdash \vdash$
	150	-	$\vdash$		$\vdash$		-	-	-	$\vdash \vdash \vdash$
اـــــا	.00	اا	<b></b>				L	L		ш

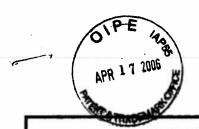
Se	earc	h No	tes	

		Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination	er
	10/378,261	GIANNELLI, RAYMON	D .
	Examiner	Art Unit	
	Jaromo W. Donnothy	2764	

	SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner	
482	108	0/30/05	he)	
	136	/ /		
	72			
	73			
	47-101			
	130			
	142			

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner

SEARCH NOT (INCLUDING SEARCH :	ES STRATEGY	)
	DATE	EXMR
	***************************************	
	·	
	*	
	,	



# **AMENDMENT A**

Docket No. C0016/7092

Applicant:

Raymond Giannelli

Serial No:

10/378,261 March 3, 2003

Filed: For:

ROWING MACHINE Jerome Donnelly

Examiner: Art Unit:

3764

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.8(a)

The undersigned hereby certifies that this document is being placed in the United States mail with first-class postage attached, addressed to Mail Stop Amendment, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on the 12<sup>th</sup> day of April, 2006.

Beverly Strasnick

Mail Stop Amendment Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

In response to the office communication dated October 12, 2005, please amend the above-identified application as follows:

Amendments to the Claims begin on page 2 of this paper.

Remarks/Arguments begin on page 8 of this paper.

# **Amendments to the Claims**

This listing of claims will replace all prior versions, and listings, of claims in the application:

## **Listing of Claims:**

- 1. (Currently Amended) A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly including a first handle portion adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.
- 2. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 3. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 4. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a frame, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame.
- 5. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 4, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame forward and above a user.

- 6. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.
- 7. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein the first handle portion is substantially vertically oriented.
- 8. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein, the first handle portion travels to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion travels to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.
- 9. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 8, further comprising a second handle portion operatively connected to the input assemble, the second handle portion traveling to the nadir of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the first position to the second position and the second handle portion traveling to the apex of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.
- 10. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the forearms of a user remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.

- 11. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 12. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 13. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.
- 14. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a user support structure including: a seat mounted to the frame; and a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.
- 15. (Currently Amended) A row exercise machine comprising: a frame; an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of a user, the input assembly including a first handle portion and a second handle portion and defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion and the second handle portion from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion; and a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 16. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 17. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 18. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 19. (Original) The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are substantially vertically oriented.
- 20. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the user's forearms remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved.

- 21. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.
- 22. (Original) The row exercise machine according to claim 15, further comprising a user support structure including: a seat mounted to the frame; and a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.
- 23. (Original) A row exercise machine comprising: a frame; user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a chest pad; an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of the seat, the input assembly including a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each having a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, a pair of handle portions operably operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms and defining a substantially linear path when moved from a first position to a second position, wherein the pair of handle portions travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position and the pair of handle portions travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position; and a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 24. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in diverging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 25. (Original) The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in converging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position.

# **Remarks and Arguments**

# The Section 102 Rejection of Claims 1-25

The Examiner has rejected claims 1-25 as anticipated by the Giannelli '447 reference, U.S. Patent number 5,997,447.

Reconsideration of this rejection is respectfully requested.

A claim is anticipated only if each and every element as set forth in the claim is found, either expressly or inherently described, in a single prior art reference. Ex Parte Swope, 2004 Pat. App. LEXIS 30, (Bd.Pat.App. 2004).

The Giannelli '447 describes and discloses a chest press machine where a user pushes a pair of handles from a stationary start position outwardly under force of weight resistance. As repeatedly stated throughout the specification of the Giannelli '447 reference the path of the handles is not linear, it is curvilinear.

For at least these reasons the Giannelli '447 reference cannot be said to anticipate the presently claimed invention. As claimed, the present invention in the only two independent claims 1 and 15 (and thus in all remaining dependent claims) calls for the handle portion to travel in a linear path and to move from the start position via a pulling motion, not a pushing motion.

The Giannelli '447 reference does not anywhere disclose all of the elements of the claimed invention expressly or inherently. Rather, the Giannelli reference teaches the opposition of the claimed invention.

### CONCLUSION

Reconsideration of the present application and early and favorable action is respectfully requested. If the examiner believes that a teleconference would expedite prosecution of the present application, the examiner is invited to call the Applicants' undersigned attorney at the Examiner's earliest convenience.

Any amendments or cancellation of claims made herein is made without prejudice and is not an admission that said canceled or amended subject matter is not patentable. Applicant reserves the right to pursue said canceled or amended subject matter in one or more continuation applications.

Please grant any extensions of time required to enter this response and charge any additional required fees to our deposit account 02-3038.

Date: April 12, 2006

Respectfully submitted

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 KUDIRKA & JOBSE, LLP Customer Number 021127

Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656

9



# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/378,261	03/03/2003	Raymond Giannelli	23555-92U	1700
	7590 07/18/2006		EXAM	INER
KUDIRKA & ONE STATE	& JOBSE, LLP		DONNELLY,	JEROME W
SUITE 800			ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
BOSTON, M	A 02109		3764	
		•	DATE MAILED: 07/18/2006	5

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

	Application No.	Applicant(s)
Office Action Summer	10/378,261	GIANNELLI, RAYMOND
Office Action Summary	Examiner	Art Unit
	Jerome W. Donnelly	3764
The MAILING DATE of this communication app Period for Reply	ears on the cover sheet with the c	orrespondence address
A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DA  Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.13 after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.  If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period was Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).	ATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION 36(a). In no event, however, may a reply be time will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from cause the application to become ARANDONE.	ely filed the mailing date of this communication.
Status		
1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on	7/06	
	≁ action is non-final.	
3) Since this application is in condition for allowan		cognition on to the monito in
closed in accordance with the practice under E		
	x paite Quayle, 1955 C.D. 11, 45	3 O.G. 213.
Disposition of Claims		
4) 又 Claim(s) <u>/ えら</u> is/are pending in the application		
4a) Of the above claim(s) is/are withdraw	vn from consideration.	
5) Claim(s) is/are allowed. 6) Claim(s) <u>/ ネ</u> is/are rejected.		
6)☑ Claim(s) 🔼 🥇 is/are rejected.		
7) Claim(s) is/are objected to.		
8) Claim(s) are subject to restriction and/or	election requirement.	
Application Papers		
9) The specification is objected to by the Examiner	:	
10) The drawing(s) filed on is/are: a) acce	epted or b) objected to by the E	xaminer.
Applicant may not request that any objection to the o		
Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction		• •
11) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Exa		
Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119		
12) ☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign ¡ a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some * c) ☐ None of:	priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-	·(d) or (f).
<ol> <li>Certified copies of the priority documents</li> </ol>	have been received.	
<ol><li>Certified copies of the priority documents</li></ol>	have been received in Application	on No
<ol><li>Copies of the certified copies of the priori</li></ol>	ty documents have been received	d in this National Stage
application from the International Bureau	(PCT Rule 17.2(a)).	-
* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of	of the certified copies not received	i.
	السكيل	JEROME DONNELLY
Attach-se-Ma)	15	PRIMARY EXAMINER
Attachment(s)	🗀	
Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)     Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)	4) Interview Summary ( Paper No(s)/Mail Dat	
3) Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449 or PTO/SB/08) Paper No(s)/Mail Date	5) Notice of Informal Pa	
S. Patent and Trademark Office		

# Response to Applicants remarks dated 4/17/06

Applicant arguments argue that the claims claim a his device as traveling in a "linear path". The claims however as originally present and as now amended claim a device which has handles which travel in a <u>substantially</u> linear path. Given applicants claims of substantially linear, it would lead one to believe that the applicant is trying to cover or present a claim limitation which will encompass a path of travel which is broader in scope that straight. Absent any clarification by the applicant the examiner the is of the opinion that if the path of applicants invention is not completely linear then it must encompass the disclosure of Giannelli (447) of being slightly curvilinear.

The examiner can not patentably distinguish between the disclosure of slightly curvilear and the claim language substantially linear.

The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless -

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

Claims 1-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Giannelli.

Claims 1-25 are rejected for the same reasons as set forth in view Office Action 10/12/05

The examiner further, note that the handle members of Giannelli are capable of being pulled by the user of the device. The user is not limited to be confined to his seat.

Application/Control Number: 10/378,261

Art Unit: 3764

THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL. Applicant is reminded of the extension of time

Page 3

policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for reply to this final action is set to expire THREE MONTHS from the mailing date of this action. In the event a first reply is filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the THREE-MONTH shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event, however, will the statutory period for reply expire later than SIX MONTHS from the mailing

Any inquiry concerning this communication should be directed to Jerome Donnelly at telephone number (571) 272-4975.

Jerome Donnelly

date of this final action.

A000084

•	Search No	ites

Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination	
10/378,261	GIANNELLI, RAYMONE	)
Examiner	Art Unit	
Jerome W. Donnelly	3764	

	SEAR	CHED	
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
480_	108 136	a/34/05	Je
	72		
	97-101		
	130 142		
	625	jutal	
·	יט		

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
•			

SEARCH NOTES (INCLUDING SEARCH STRATEGY)		
	DATE	EXMR
	-	
	ļ	
·.		
	- -	
	<u> </u>	
All the second s		
	,	

Index	of Cl	laims

Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination
10/378,261	GIANNELLI, RAYMOND
Examiner	Art Unit

Rejected	_	(Through numeral) Cancelled
Allowed	÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
1	Interference

Jerome W. Donnelly

A	Appeal
0	Objected

3764

		ــــا							L	_ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ								L	Ĺ
CI	aim	Т				Da	te				٦	С	laim	Т				Da	te
Final	Original	9	1	T	T							Final	Original		T	Ī		Ť	Ť
L	1/	Z	1	1	$\downarrow$	_	_	+	_	_	1			1	_	-	1	_	L
-	2	Ψ,	+	╫	+-	+	╁	+-	╁	+	-	-	51 52	+-	+	+-	+	+	+-
-	3	1.	1	+-	+	+	╁	┿	┿	╁	┨	-	53	╫	╁	+-	╅╸	+-	+
-	4	U	⅌	╁	+-	┿	┿	+	+	+	-	-	54	+	╀	┿	+	┿	+-
	5		<del> </del>	十	+	+	十	+-	+-	╫	┥	-	55	+	+-	╫	+	╁	+
	6	2	十	+	+-	+-	+	+	╁	┿	┨	-	56	+-	╁	╁	╁	╁	╁
	7	V		+	+	十	+	+	+-	+	┪	-	57	+-	╁	╁	+	+	┿
	8	L	<del> -</del>	T	+	+	+	+	+	+-	1		58	+	╁	+	+-	+-	+-
	9	4	1_	1	T	1	1	十	+	†	1		59	+	+	+-	+-	+-	+-
	10		7_	1		$\top$	╅	1	T	†	1		60	$\dagger$	+-	+	+	+	+
	11			T	T	T	T	$\top$			1		61	T	T	1	T	$\dagger$	+-
	12	I	7	T	T	T	T	T	$\top$	1	1		62	†	T	+	+	T	T
	13	L	Ł			T	Т	T	T		1		63	1	T	T	T	†	T
	14	1	1			Τ	Т	T	Τ	T	7		64	T	T	T		$\top$	1
	15	1	1			L			Π	Π	]		65	T	Т	T	T	1	
	16	6	1		L			$\perp$		Ι	]		66	Τ		T	T	Τ	T
<u></u>	17	4	Ł	L				L			]		67	Π	Π		T	Т	T
	18	-	+	$\perp$	丄	L	$\perp$				]		68						Γ
	19	-		1	$\perp$	1	丄	_	_				69						
	20	6		丄	_	1	↓_	_	_	_	1		70		L				
	21	V		_	╄	Ļ	╀	<del> </del>	<u> </u>	L	1		71						
	22	-	<u> </u>	╀		4	↓_	╀	_	_	-	<u></u>	72		L	_	<u> </u>	L	
	23	V	<u> </u>	╄	ــ	ــــ	╀-	1	_	_	4		73	<u> </u>	L	<u> </u>	_	L	<u> </u>
	24 25	V	<u> </u>	┼	┼	<del> </del>	╀┈	-	-	┼	4	<u> </u>	74	<u> </u>	_	↓_	<u> </u>	<del> </del>	ــــ
$\vdash$	26	V	1	╫	╫	╀	┼	+-	╀	╀	-	-	75	-	├-		╀	ـ	╀-
	27		╁	╁	┿	╁	╁	+-	╀	╀	┨		76 77	├-	├-		├-	├	┞
	28		╁	╫	╁	╁╌	╁	+-	╁	╁	┨		78	┝	╁	╀	╀	┼	├
	29		┪	╁	┰	┰	╁	+	╁	╁	1	<del> </del>	79	┢	├	┢	-	├-	-
	30	_	┢	<del> -</del>	╁	╁	╁	+	+	<del> </del>	1		80	├	⊢	╁	-	-	├-
	31		$\vdash$	<del>                                     </del>	†	$\vdash$	+-	╈	-	┼	1		81	╁╾	⊢	┢	-	$\vdash$	├
	32			<del>                                     </del>	m	1	T	†	╁	†-	1		82	t	┼-	╫	+-	$\vdash$	<del> </del>
	33			$\vdash$	T	T	T	1	T	$\vdash$	1		83	1	$\vdash$	╁	<del>                                     </del>	<del> </del>	<del>                                     </del>
	34				T			T	T	1	1	<b> </b>	84			┢	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>
	35										1		85			Г	Τ	T	П
	36						Γ				]		86	<u> </u>	Г				
	37										]		87					Г	
	38												88	L					
$oxed{oxed}$	39				L		$\Box$						89						
$\sqcup$	40				<u> </u>	_			L				90						
	41			<u> </u>		L_	<u>L</u>	<u></u>	L				91						
	42					<u> </u>		_		<u> </u>			92						
	43			<u> </u>		<u> </u>		<u> </u>	_	<u> </u>			93				<u> </u>		
	44	_	L			<u> </u>	_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>				94						
	45	4			<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	ļ	<u> </u>	L_			95				_		
	46			<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	-	-	<u> </u>	<b> </b>			96		_	_			Ш
	47			$\vdash$	$\vdash$	<b> </b> -	<u> </u>	<b> </b>	<u> </u>	<b> </b>			97			$\vdash$	Щ		
	48						-	L-	<u> </u>				98	$\Box$					
-	49 50	-			-	<u> </u>	-		<u> </u>				99			_			$\sqcup$
- 1	DU I	- 1				I	ŧ	1				1	100						

CI	Т	Date								
		1	T	T	Т	T	Ť	Т	Т	Т
Final	Original									
	101				L	L		上		上
	102	L	L		L					
	103	L		$oldsymbol{ol}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}$						
	102 103 104		L		L			L		
	105	_	_	L	L			L		
	106	L	_		L	L	<u> </u>	L		
	107 108	_	<u> </u>	L_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	L	_	
	108	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	_	↓_	<del> </del>	L	↓	$oxed{oxed}$
	109	<u> </u>	ļ	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	ـ	<u>Ļ</u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	
	110	-		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	┼	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	ـــــ	↓_
	111 112 113		<del> </del>	-	<u> </u>	-	<del> </del>	<u> </u>	┼	-
	112		-	-	-	-	┼	<del> </del>	┼	$\vdash$
	114	├	-	├-	-	+-	┼	├	├-	$\vdash$
	114 115	├	-	$\vdash$	-	+	+	-	╀	$\vdash$
	116	-	-	├-	-	╁	├-	├	┼	+
	116 117	<del> </del>	-	<del> </del>	├-	+-	+-	-	+-	$\vdash$
	118	-	-	├─	┝	-	┢	<del> </del>	┢	Н
	119		_	-	<del> </del>	┢	╁╌	├	-	H
	118 119 120	_	_		<del> </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<del>                                     </del>	<u> </u>	╁	$\vdash$
	121 122					1	$\vdash$	_	+	Н
	122					$\vdash$	<u> </u>	_	1	$\Box$
	123				$\vdash$	1		$\vdash$	1	$\vdash$
	124									$\vdash$
	123 124 125 126 127 128 129									П
	126									
	127									Ш
	128					<u> </u>	<u> </u>	L		Ш
	129	_				<u> </u>		_	<u> </u>	$\sqcup$
	130 131								ļ	$\sqcup$
	122			-		-	-		-	
	132 133 134 135	-				-	-		<del> </del>	$\vdash \vdash$
	134					-	-	-	-	$\vdash$
	135	_				-			-	$\vdash$
	136	$\neg$	$\neg$	$\neg$			_			Н
	137			$\neg$			_	_		H
	138									Н
	139 140									
	140									
	141	_	_	_						
	142		$\dashv$	_						Ш
	143	_	-	-	_				<u> </u>	Ц
	144					-			<u> </u>	Щ
	145 146	$\dashv$	$\dashv$		-			_		$\dashv$
	147	$\dashv$	4	-			_	_	<u> </u>	$\dashv$
	148	$\dashv$	$\dashv$				-		_	$\dashv$
	149	+	$\dashv$	$\dashv$	$\dashv$	-	$\dashv$		-	$\vdash$
$\dashv$	150	$\dashv$	$\dashv$	-	$\dashv$		$\dashv$	-	-	$\vdash$
	100									



**NOTICE OF APPEAL** 

Docket No. C0016/7092

Applicant:

Raymond Giannelli

Serial No:

10/378,261

Filed: Conf. No: March 3, 2003

For:

1700 ROWING MACHINE

Examiner:

Jerome W. Donnelly

Art Unit:

3764

## CERTIFICATE OF MAILING UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.8(a)

The undersigned hereby certifies that this document is being placed in the United States mail with first-class postage attached, addressed to Mail Stop AF, Commissioner for Patents, P. O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on January 16, 2007.

Jugith M. Schultz

Mail Stop AF Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Applicant hereby appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences from the decision of the examiner dated July 18, 2006, rejecting the following claims: 1-25.

Small	Entity Applicant claims small entity status. Small Entity status is no longer claimed.
Exten conclos	sion of Time  A petition for an extension of time for three month(s) under 37 C.F.R. §1.136(a) is ed.
Paymo ⊠ □	ent A check in the amount of \$1,520.00 is enclosed. Charge Account No. 02-3038 in the amount of

01/19/2007 LWONDIM1 00000025 10378261

attached.

01 FC:1401

500.00 OP

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees incurred under 37 C.F.R. §1.16, §1.17 and §1.18 required by this paper and during the entire pendency of this application to Account No. 02-3038.

Respectfully submitted,/

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 Rissman Jobse Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP

Customer Number 021127

Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656



# ETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME UNDER 37 CFR §1.136(a)

Docket No. C0016/7092

Applicant:

Raymond Giannelli

Serial No:

10/378,261 March 3, 2003

Filed: Conf. No:

1700

For: Examiner:

ROWING MACHINE Jerome W. Donnelly

Art Unit:

3764

# CERTIFICATE OF MAILING UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.8(a)

The undersigned hereby certifies that this document is being placed in the United States mail with first-class postage attached, addressed to Mail Stop AF, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on January 16, 2007.

Judith M. Schultz

Mail Stop AF Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

This is a request under the provisions of 37 C.F.R. §1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a response in the above-identified application up to, and including, January 18, 2007.

Small	Entity Applicant claims small entity status	
Exten	sion	
The re	quested extension and the appropriate fee are as	follows:
	One month (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(1))	
	Two months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(2))	
Ø	Three months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(3))	1,020.00
	Four months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(4))	•
	Five months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(5))	
	Reduction by one-half for request by small entity	
	Total Fee:	\$1,020.00
Payme	ent	
	A check in the amount of the extension fee is end	losed.
$\boxtimes$	The extension fee is included in a fee payment m accompanying this petition.	ade in connection with papers

01/19/2007 LWONDIM1 00000025 10378261

02 FC:1253

1020.00 OP

Petition For Extension of Time 1 of 2

	Charge the extension fee to deposit account no.	02-3038. A duplicate of this sheet is
$\boxtimes$	attached. The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge	ge any other fees under 37 C.F.R. §1.16
	and §1.17 that may be required, or credit any ov	erpayment, to deposit account no.
	02-3038.	
11	l + l h	$\cap$
//U c	Faureno Quino	Date: Junsuy 16, 2007
M. Lav	Wywydd X Juywy wrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915	
	nan Jobse Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP	
	mer Number 021127	V

Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656

Petition For Extension of Time 2 of 2



AF DW

	TRANSMITTAL LETTER	Docket No. C0016/7092
Applicant: Serial No: Filed: Conf. No: For: Examiner: Art Unit:	Raymond Giannelli 10/378,261 March 3, 2003 1700 ROWING MACHINE Jerome W. Donnelly 3764	

Mail Stop AF Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

# **Enclosures**

	Affidavit under 37 C.F.R. 1.131		Request for Corrected Filing Receipt
	Assignment Papers		Copy of Original Filing Receipt
	Change of Correspondence Address		Request for Continued Examination
	Declaration/Power of Attorney		Request for Reconsideration
$\boxtimes$	Extension of Time Request		Request for Refund
	Fee Transmittal Form		Response to Missing Parts
	Invention Disclosure Document		Return Receipt Postcard
$\boxtimes$	Notice of Appeal		Sheets Formal Drawing(s)
	Petition for		Status Letter
	Power of Attorney Form		Terminal Disclaimer
	Request for Certified Copies	$\boxtimes$	Other: Check in the amount of
			\$1,520.00

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 Rissman Jobse Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP

Customer Number 021127

Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656

Transmittal Letter - General 1of 1

### PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME Docket No. C016/7092US2 UNDER 37 CFR §1.136(a) Applicant: Raymond Giannelli Serial No: 10/378.261 Filed: March 3, 2003 For: **ROWING MACHINE** Jerome W. Donnelly Examiner: Art Unit: 3764 Conf. No.: 1700 MS Appeal Brief - Patents

Commissioner for Patents

P.O. Box 1450

Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

This is a request under the provisions of 37 C.F.R. §1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a response in the above-identified application up to, and including, July 16, 2007.

Small Entity				
	Applicant claims small entity status			
Exten	sion			
The requested extension and the appropriate fee are as follows:				
	One month (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(1))			
	Two months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(2))			
	Three months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(3))			
	Four months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(4))	1590.00		
	Five months (37 C.F.R. §1.17(a)(5))	1000.00		
	Reduction by one-half for request by small entity	V		
	Total Fee:			
Payme		<u> </u>		
П	A check in the amount of the extension fee is er	nclosed		
$\overline{\boxtimes}$	The extension fee is included in a fee payment made in connection with papers			
	accompanying this petition.	nade in connection with papers		

Petition For Extension of Time 1 of 2

Charge the extension fee to deposit account no. 02-3038.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any other fees under 37 C.F.R. §1.16 and §1.17 that may be required, or credit any overpayment, to deposit account no. 02-3038.

/M. Lawrence Oliverio/ Date: 2007-07-16

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 Rissman Jobse Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP Customer Number 21127 Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656

# APPELLANT'S BRIEF UNDER 37 CFR § 41.37

Docket No. C016/7092US2

Applicant: Raymond Giannelli

Serial No: 10/378,261
Filed: March 3, 2003
For: ROWING MACHINE
Examiner: Jerome W. Donnelly

Art Unit: 3764 Conf. No.: 1700

MS Appeal Brief – Patents Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

This brief is submitted in response to the Final Office Action dated July 18, 2006 and in furtherance of the Notice of Appeal filed January 16, 2007.

The fees required under § 1.17(c), and any required petition for extension of time for filing this brief and fees therefor, are dealt with in the accompanying TRANSMITTAL OF APPEAL BRIEF.

This brief contains these items under the following headings, and in the order set forth below (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1):

1	REAL PARTY IN INTEREST	2
11	RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES	2
Ш	STATUS OF CLAIMS	2
IV	STATUS OF AMENDMENTS	2
V	CONCISE EXPLANATION OF CLAIMED SUBJECT	2
VI	GROUNDS OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED	4
VII	ARGUMENT	5
VIII	APPENDIX OF CLAIMS	11
IX	EVIDENCE APPENDIX	16
Χ	RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX	17

#### ı REAL PARTY IN INTEREST (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(i))

The real party in interest in this appeal is Cybex International, Inc.

#### II. RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(ii))

There are no other appeals or interferences that will directly affect, or be directly affected by, or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

#### III. STATUS OF CLAIMS (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(iii))

# **Total Number of Claims in Application**

Claims originally in the application are: 1-25.

# Status of All Claims In Application

Claims still pending: 1-25

Claims canceled:

none

Claims withdrawn from consideration, but not canceled: none

Claims allowed:

none

Claims rejected:

1-25

Claims objected to:

none

### Claims on Appeal

The claims on appeal are: 1-25.

# IV. STATUS OF AMENDMENTS (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(iv))

All substantive amendments submitted by applicant have been entered.

# V. SUMMARY OF CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER (37 C.F.R. 41.31(c)(1)(v))

The claimed subject matter of the present application is perhaps best summarized by the independent claims. There are three (3) independent claims pending which read as follows.

References below to the specification and drawings are made with reference to the application as published by the United States Patent Office:

Claim 1. A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly (e.g. para. [0020], Fig. 1, element 2) including a first handle portion (e.g. para. [0026], Fig. 4, element 52) adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position (e.g. para [0020], Fig. 1) by a pulling force (e.g. Fig. 4, P) exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path (e.g. P, Fig. 4) for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.

Claim 15. A row exercise machine comprising: a frame (e.g. para [0021], Fig. 2, element 12); an input assembly (e.g. para. [0020], Fig. 1, element 2) pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of a user, the input assembly including a first handle portion (e.g. para. [0026], Fig. 4, element 52) and a second handle portion (e.g. para. [0026], Fig. 4, element 54) and defining a substantially linear path (e.g. Fig. 4, P) for the first handle portion and the second handle portion from a first position to a second position (e.g. para [0020], Fig. 1) by a pulling force (e.g. Fig. 4, P) exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion; and a resistance mechanism (e.g. para. [0028], element 60) operably connected to the input assembly.

Claim 23. A row exercise machine comprising: a frame (e.g. para [0021], Fig. 2, element 12); user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a chest pad (e.g. para [0021], elements 20, 22); an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of the seat, the input assembly including a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms (e.g. para [0022], elements 30a, 30b) each having a primary lever arm (e.g. para [0020], elements 32a) pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm (e.g. para [0020], elements 34a) pivotable about a secondary axis, a pair of handle portions (e.g. para. [0026], Fig. 4, element 52, 54) operably operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms and

defining a substantially linear path when moved from a first position to a second position (e.g. para [0020], Fig. 1), wherein the pair of handle portions travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path (e.g. Fig. 4, P) as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position and the pair of handle portions travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position; and a resistance mechanism (e.g. para. [0028], element 60)operably connected to the input assembly.

# VI. GROUNDS OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(vi))

The Examiner has rejected all claims, claims 1-25, on the basis that the one cited reference, the Giannelli '447 reference, U.S. patent no. 5,997,447 renders the claims obvious under Section 103(a).

The primary considerations on this appeal are:

- (a) Whether the prior art Giannelli '447 reference discloses, as called for by all of the independent claims a *rowing* machine.
- (b) Whether the prior art Giannelli '447 reference discloses, as called for by claims 1 and 15 a rowing machine having a handle adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position in a substantially linear path by a *pulling* force.
- (c) Whether the prior art Giannelli '447 reference discloses, as called for by claim 23 a rowing machine having handles that move in a *substantially linear path* from start to finish.
- (d) Whether the prior art Giannelli '447 reference discloses, as called for by claim 23 a rowing machine having a chest pad for resisting a pulling motion exerted by the user in pulling the handles.

# VII. ARGUMENT (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(vii))

# The Section 103(a) Rejection Should be Reversed/Withdrawn

The prior art Giannelli '447 reference does not teach every element of any of the independent claims 1, 15 or 23 and is not really analogous to the apparatus of the this application such that an obviousness rejection should/can fairly apply.

# **Independent Claims 1 and 15**

Claims 1 and 15 both call for a *rowing machine* having a first handle portion that is adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position *by a pulling force* (e.g. Fig. 4, P) exerted by a user on the first handle portion *in a rowing motion* (e.g. Fig. 4, P, e.g. See paras. [0030]-[0032] describing operation of the machine requiring the user to exert a *pulling* motion and/or to *pull backwardly* in order to effect a resistance from the weight stack and to perform the exercise.

Similarly, claim 23 calls for a *rowing machine* that includes a pair of primary and secondary lever arms arranged in a *four bar linkage* arrangement having a handle that is moved in a *substantially linear path* in the course of being pulled from a first *rowing* position to a second *rowing* position.

# The Only Exercise Machine and Exercise Motion Described In the Specification and Claimed In The Claims is A Row-Exercise Machine that Requires Pulling

The specification is clear that it is dealing exclusively with a *rowing* and an exercise machine that requires *pulling* force as the exercise. The only apparatus described in the specification is a pulling/rowing exercise apparatus. For example, at paragraphs [0030]-[0032] of the specification, the operation, components and function of the apparatus are described as follows:

[0030] In an embodiment, as shown in FIGS. 2-5, the handles 38a and 38b are operably connected to the weight stack 60 via the transmission system 64. A pair of frame pulleys 76 are mounted to the vertical support 18 of the support frame 12. A lifting pulley 78 is operably connected to the handles 38a and 38b by a first cable 80, wherein the first cable 80 is

threaded about and through the pair of frame pulleys 76, such that the lifting pulley 78 is positioned above the second cam 70. A lifting cable 82 connects the lifting pulley 78 to the second cam 70, where the second cam 70 is caused to rotate when at least one of the handles 38a or 38b is pulled back.

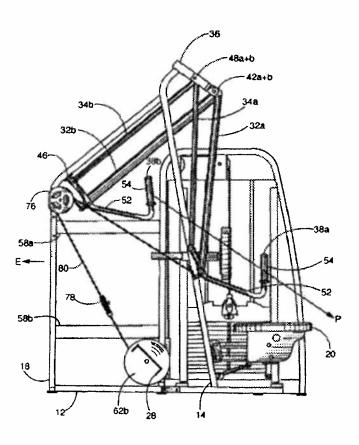
[0031] A belt 84 is attached at one end to the first cam 68, extending over the weight stack pulleys 72a and 72b and attached to the weight stack 60 at the opposite end. (See also FIG. 5). **As the user pulls back on the handles** 38a and 38b, the lifting pulley 78 is raised, causing the lifting cable 80 to unwind and rotate the second cam 70. As the second cam 70 rotates, the shaft 66 and the first cam 68 rotate as well. The rotation of the first cam 68 pulls the belt 84 over the weight stack pulleys 72a and 72b, and thus lifts the weight stack 60.

[0032] In an exemplary method of operation, a weight is selected on the main weight stack 60 by placing a pin (not shown) in one of the holes, as is known in the art. The user adjusts the seat 20 and chest pad 22 to a suitable position on the front leg 14. For example, a user with a longer torso will adjust the seat to a lower height such that the handles 38a and 38b are positioned at a comfortable height parallel with the users shoulders. The chest pad 22 is adjusted such that when the user grasps the handles tension is placed on the lifting cable 80. The user grasps the handles 38a and 38b and pulls back causing the lifting pulley 78 to be raised. As the lifting pulley 78 is raised, the first cam 70, shaft 66, and second cam 68 rotate, pulling on the belt 84 and lifting the selected weight. The user then returns the handles 38a and 38b to the initial position, thereby lowering the weight. When the user pulls the handles 38a and 38b back, the resistance provided by the weight is overcome. When the user returns the handles 38a and 38b, the user succumbs to the resistance provided by the weight.

The figures of the present application also make clear that the language of the claims are directed to a rowing machine. A good example is Figure 4 of the application which shows the handles in a distal starting position relative to the user on the seat and shows clearly the *substantially linear* path P along which the handles travel in the rowing motion:

# **Row-Exercise of This Application**

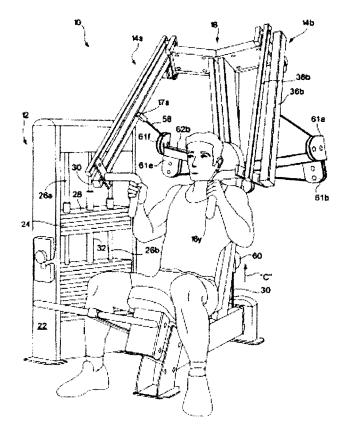
FIG. 4



Furthermore, claim 23 calls for a *chest pad* as a component. The purpose of the chest is to oppose the *row-pulling* motion on the handles. No such component is present or even usable in the prior art Giannelli '447 apparatus.

The prior art Giannelli '447 machine cited by the Examiner is not fairly analogizable to the present application. It is a *chest press* machine. As can be seen from the '447 patent's figures, this machine is dealing exclusively with a structure, components and a motion that is contrary to the structure and motion of a rowing machine. A chest press exercise machine and motion is a different field of structure and exercise from a row machine. Figure 5 of the cited '447 prior art is a good example of the difference in motion, structure and purpose of the machine:

## **The Cited Chest Press**



The examiner cites this machine as anticipating or rendering the claims of this application obvious. In fairness the only truly relevant structure of this machine to the presently claimed apparatus is a four-bar linkage. The presence, in a vacuum, of a four bar linkage is not nearly enough to arrive at a conclusion of obviousness.

In the Giannelli '447 machine, the user typically leans back against a *backrest* for support in a chest press. No such structure or functional equivalent is used in a rowing machine

In the Giannelli '447 machine, the user typically engages the handles from a *shoulder high* position in a chest press. No such motion or action is required or possible in a rowing machine.

In the Giannelli '447 machine, the handles are arranged and engaged at a *should high* position in a chest press. No such motion or action is required or possible in a rowing machine.

In the Giannelli '447 machine, the user *pushes against* the handles to move them in a *curvilinear path* from back to front. No such motion or action is required or possible in a rowing machine.

#### A Rowing Exercise-Machine is Contrary to A Chest Press Exercise-Machine

The '447 cited by the Examiner decribes repeatedly throughout that the user *pushes* the handles through a *curvilinear path* from a chest to shoulder high rest position to a fully extended outward or forward position. This is *opposite* the presently claimed invention.

The present invention describes a row exercise machine where the user *pulls* on the handles in order to effect resistance and pulls in a *substantially linear path*. The examiner's comment that a linear path cannot be sufficiently distinguished from a curvilinear path does not take into account any of the distinct structures or functions of the claimed apparatus.

The prior art must be such that it is "reasonably pertinent to the particular problem with which the invention was involved" in order for obviousness to apply in view thereof. Stratoflex, Inc. v. Aeroquip Corp., 713 F.2d 1530, 1535, 218 U.S.P.Q. 871, 876 (Fed. Cir. 1983). There is no reason, suggestion, or motivation in the Giannelli '447 chest press or elsewhere in the prior art that deal with the same problem as the claims of this application deal with, i.e. a rowing machine. Ruiz v. Foundation Engineering Systems, Inc., 234 F.3d 654 (Fed. Cir. 2000).

It is fundamental to the law of obviousness that it is improper to rely on references that do not pertain to the same field of art to arrive at a conclusion of obviousness. See, <u>In Re Dembiczak et al.</u>, 173 F.3d 994 (Fed. Cir. 1999), where the combination of decorated paper trash bag art, with plastic trash bag art, to find claims of an invention to decorated plastic trash bags obvious, was found improper.

#### The Section 102 Rejection

To the extent there remains a Section 102 anticipation rejection in this case, such rejection should be reversed for at least the following reasons.

A claim is anticipated only if each and every element as set forth in the claim is found,

either expressly or inherently described, in a single prior art reference. Ex Parte Swope, 2004

Pat. App. LEXIS 30, (Bd.Pat.App. 2004).

For all of the reasons noted above, the Giannelli '447 reference simply does not contain

every element of any of independent claims 1, 15 or 23. For at least the same reasons that the

claims are not obvious, they are not anticipated.

CONCLUSION

For the reasons stated above, it is respectfully requested that the examiner's rejection of

Date: 2007-07-16

claims 1-25 of the present application be reversed and that the present application be allowed

for issuance.

Respectfully submitted,

/M. Lawrence Oliverio/

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Reg. No. 30,915

RISSMAN, JOBSE, HENDRICKS & OLIVERIO LLP

Customer Number 21127

Tel: (617) 367-4600

Fax: (617) 367-4656

10

A000103

#### VIII APPENDIX OF CLAIMS (37 C.F.R. 41.37(c)(1)(viii))

The text of the claims involved in the appeal are:

- 1. A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly including a first handle portion adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.
- 2. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 3. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a second handle portion, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 4. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a frame, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame.
- 5. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 4, wherein the input assembly is pivotally mounted to the frame forward and above a user.
- 6. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.
- 7. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein the first handle portion is substantially vertically oriented.
- 8. The exercise machine according to claim 1, wherein, the first handle portion travels to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the first position to

the second position and the first handle portion travels to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.

- 9. The exercise machine according to claim 8, further comprising a second handle portion operatively connected to the input assemble, the second handle portion traveling to the nadir of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the first position to the second position and the second handle portion traveling to the apex of the substantially linear path as the second handle portion is moved from the second position to the first position.
- 10. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the forearms of a user remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 11. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 12. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 13. The exercise machine according to claim 9, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.

- 14. The exercise machine according to claim 1, further comprising a user support structure including: a seat mounted to the frame; and a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.
- 15. A row exercise machine comprising: a frame; an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of a user, the input assembly including a first handle portion and a second handle portion and defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion and the second handle portion from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion; and a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.
- 16. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position and the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 17. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in diverging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 18. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion travel in converging planes as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved from the second position to the first position.
- 19. The exercise machine exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are substantially vertically oriented.

- 20. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the first handle portion and the second handle portion are adapted to be grasped by a user, such that the user's forearms remain substantially parallel to the ground as the first handle portion and the second handle portion are moved.
- 21. The exercise machine according to claim 15, wherein the input assembly comprises a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms pivotally connected to the frame, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, and the first handle portion and the second handle portion operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms.
- 22. The row exercise machine according to claim 15, further comprising a user support structure including: a seat mounted to the frame; and a chest pad mounted to the frame above and in front of the seat.
- 23. A row exercise machine comprising: a frame; user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a chest pad; an input assembly pivotably mounted to the frame forward and above of the seat, the input assembly including a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each having a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis, a secondary lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, a pair of handle portions operably operatively associated with one each of the primary and secondary lever arms and defining a substantially linear path when moved from a first position to a second position, wherein the pair of handle portions travel to a nadir of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position and the pair of handle portions travel to an apex of the substantially linear path as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position; and a resistance mechanism operably connected to the input assembly.

- 24. The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in diverging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the first position to the second position.
- 25. The exercise machine according to claim 22, wherein the pair of handle portions travel in converging planes as the pair of handle portions are moved from the second position to the first position.

# (IX) EVIDENCE APPENDIX

(None)

# (X) RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX

(None)

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal						
Application Number:	10:	378261				
Filing Date:	03-Mar-2003					
Title of Invention:		Rowing machine				
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Ra	ymond Giannelli				
Filer:	Mi	chael L. Oliverio/D	awn Class			
Attorney Docket Number: C016/7092US2						
Filed as Large Entity						
Utility Filing Fees						
Description		Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)	
Basic Filing:						
Pages:						
Claims:						
Miscellaneous-Filing:						
Petition:						
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:						
Filing a brief in support of an appeal	Filing a brief in support of an appeal 1402 1 500 500					
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:						
Extension-of-Time:						

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Extension - 4 months with \$0 paid	1254	1	1590	1590
Miscellaneous:				
	Tota	al in USE	(\$)	2090

Electronic Ac	cknowledgement Receipt
EFS ID:	1974858
Application Number:	10378261
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	1700
Title of Invention:	Rowing machine
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Raymond Giannelli
Customer Number:	21127
Filer:	Michael L. Oliverio/Dawn Class
Filer Authorized By:	Michael L. Oliverio
Attorney Docket Number:	C016/7092US2
Receipt Date:	16-JUL-2007
Filing Date:	03-MAR-2003
Time Stamp:	14:49:57
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

# Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$2090
RAM confirmation Number	61
Deposit Account	023038

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 and 1.17

# File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes) /Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		appealbrief.pdf	543267	yes	20
·			074e922b412c96765efacc25e95beeca 804d0df2		
	Multipa	rt Description/PDF files in	zip description		
	Document De	scription	Start	E	nd
	Miscellaneous Inc	Miscellaneous Incoming Letter			1
	Extension o	2	3		
	Appeal Brie	Appeal Brief Filed			20
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Fee Worksheet (PTO-06)	fee-info.pdf	8292	no	2
	( , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	100 mo.pa		,,,0	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	55	51559	

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

#### New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

#### National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

#### New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

#### TRANSMITTAL OF APPEAL BRIEF Docket No. C016/7092US2 Applicant: Raymond Giannelli Serial No: 10/378.261 Filed: March 3, 2003 For: **ROWING MACHINE** Examiner: Jerome W. Donnelly Art Unit: 3764 Conf. No.: 1700 Mail Stop Appeal Brief - Patents Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 Transmitted herewith is the APPEAL BRIEF in this application, with respect to the Notice of Appeal filed on January 16, 2007. **Status of Applicant** This application is on behalf of Raymond Giannelli. Applicant claims small entity status. **Extension of Time** The proceedings herein are for a patent application and the provisions of 37 C.F.R.1.136 apply. An extension of time of 4 months is requested. Fee Due Appeal Brief Fee 500.00 Extension of Time Fee 1590.00 **TOTAL FEE** 2090.00 **Payment** Enclosed is a check in the amount of the total fee. The Commissioner is authorized to charge the total fee to Deposit Account No. 02-3038. The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any other fees under 37 C.F.R. §1.16 and §1.17 that may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 02-3038. /M. Lawrence Oliverio/ Date: 2007-07-16 M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 Rissman Jobse Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP Customer Number 21127 Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656

Appeal Brief Transmittal 1of 1



## United States Patent and Trademark Office

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/378,261	03/03/2003	Raymond Giannelli	C016/7092US2	1700
21127 RISSMAN JOI	7590 02/05/200 BSE HENDRICKS & (		EXAM	INER
100 Cambridge			DONNELLY	, JEROME W
Suite 2101 BOSTON, MA	. 02114		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
·			3764	
			MAIL DATE	DELIVERY MODE
			02/05/2008	PAPER

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



#### UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents United States Patent and Trademark Office P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 www.uspto.gov

# BEFORE THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

MAILED

FEB 0 5 2008

**GROUP 3700** 

Application Number: 10/378,261 Filing Date: March 03, 2003

Appellant(s): GIANNELLI, RAYMOND

Lawrence Oliverio 30,915 For Appellant

#### **EXAMINER'S ANSWER**

# (1) Real Party in Interest

A statement identifying by name the real party in interest is contained in the brief.

Art Unit: 3700

#### (2) Related Appeals and Interferences

The following are the related appeals, interferences, and judicial proceedings known to the examiner which may be related to, directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal:

The examiner is not aware of any related appeals, interferences, or judicial proceedings which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

#### (3) Status of Claims

The statement of the status of claims contained in the brief is correct.

This appeal involves claims 1-25.

No amendment after final has been filed.

#### (5) Summary of Claimed Subject Matter

The appellant's statement of the grounds of rejection to be reviewed on appeal is correct.

#### **Grouping of Claims**

The rejection of claims 1-25 stand or fall together because appellants brief does not include a statement that this grouping of claims does not stand or fall together and reasons and reasons in support thereof. See 37 CFR 1.192(c)(7).

Art Unit: 3700

#### (7) Claims Appendix

The copy of the appealed claims contained in the Appendix to the brief is correct.

#### (8) Evidence Relied Upon

The following is a listing of the evidence (e.g., patents, publications, Official Notice, and admitted prior art) relied upon in the rejection of claims under appeal.

5997447 Giannelli et al 12-1999

Applicant arguments argue that the claims claim a device as traveling in a "linear path". The claims however as originally present and as now amended claim a device which has handles which travel in a <u>substantially</u> linear path. Given applicants claims of substantially linear, it would lead one to believe that the applicant is trying to cover or present a claim limitation which will encompass a path of travel which is broader in scope that straight. Absent any clarification by the applicant the examiner the **is of the** opinion that if the path of applicants invention is not completely linear then it must encompass the disclosure of Giannelli (447) of being slightly curvilinear.

The examiner can not patentably distinguish between the disclosure of slightly curvilear and the claim language substantially linear.

The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

Art Unit: 3700

Claims 1-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Giannelli et al.

The examiner reminds the applicant that in response to the functionality of his device and the disclosure of how his invention is being used: The examiner notes that although it is disclosed that Giannelli is to be used in a pushing motion Giannelli is also capable of being pulled by the user of the device. The user is not limited to, or confined to a seat when using the device.

As to the device of Giannelli et al disclosuring all of the claimed elements of the device Giannelli discloses a device including a four bar linkage first and second handles which travel in a diverging plane as the first and second handle portions are moved from a first position to a second position, said first and second handle mounted to the frame forward and above the user, resistance mechanism said handle being vertically oriented a seat; and,

Wherein a users for arms remain substantially parallel to a supporting surface as the handles are moved.

As to applicants claims of a chest pad, element (27) meets the claim language of a pad.

As to the applicants claims of substantially linear. The abstract of Giannelli et al meets said claim language of slightly curvilinear. Neither of these limitations meets the rigid limitation of being 100% linear.

Art Unit: 3764

Page 5

For the above reasons, it is believed that the rejections should be sustained.

Respectfully submitted,

Jerome Donnelly 10-01-07

Conferees:

MICHAEL A. BROWN PRIMARY EXAMINER

PRIMARY EXAMINER

Cingel. D. Sples

ANGELA D. SYKES SUPERVISORY PATENT EXAMINER TECHNOLOGY CENTER 3700

#### REQUEST FOR ORAL HEARING

Docket No. C016-7092US2

Applicant:

Raymond Giannelli

Serial No: Filed:

10/378,261 March 3, 2003

For:

**ROWING MACHINE** 

Examiner:

Jerome W. Donnelly

Art Unit:

3764

Conf. No.: 1700

Mail Stop Appeal Brief - Patents Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

This request is in furtherance of the Notice of Appeal, filed in this case on January 16, 2007.

#### REQUEST FOR ORAL HEARING

To the extent there is any question that the Examiner's rejection should not be reversed on this appeal, Applicants request an oral hearing on the present appeal.

The fees of \$1,030.00 required under § 41.20(b)(3), and any required petition for extension of time for filing this request are dealt with in the accompanying TRANSMITTAL LETTER.

Respectfully submitted

/M. Lawrence Oliverio/

Date:\_\_

2008-03-31

M. Lawrence Oliverio, Esq. Reg. No. 30,915 Rissman, Jobse, Hendricks & Oliverio, LLP Customer Number 21127

Tel: (617) 367-4600 Fax: (617) 367-4656



## United States Patent and Trademark Office

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 www.uspio.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/378,261	03/03/2003	Raymond Giannelli	C016/7092US2	1700
21127 RISSMAN IO	7590 05/02/2008 BSE HENDRICKS & O		EXAM	INER
100 Cambridge			DONNELLY,	JEROME W
Suite 2101 BOSTON, MA	. 02114		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
Booton, Mi	1 02114		3764	<u></u>
	•			
•			MAIL DATE	DELIVERY MODE
			05/02/2008	PAPER

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



Commissioner for Patents United States Patent and Trademark Office P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 www.usplo.gov

# BEFORE THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

Application Number: 10/378,261 Filing Date: March 03, 2003

Appellant(s): GIANNELLI, RAYMOND

**MAILED** 

MAY 0 2 2008

**GROUP 3700** 

Lawrence Oliverio 30,915 For Appellant

**EXAMINER'S ANSWER** 

#### (1) Real Party in Interest

A statement identifying by name the real party in interest is contained in the brief.

Art Unit: 3764

#### (2) Related Appeals and Interferences

The following are the related appeals, interferences, and judicial proceedings known to the examiner which may be related to, directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal:

The examiner is not aware of any related appeals, interferences, or judicial proceedings which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

#### (3) Status of Claims

The statement of the status of claims contained in the brief is correct.

This appeal involves claims 1-25.

#### (4) Status of Amendments After Final

No amendment after final has been filed.

#### (5) Summary of Claimed Subject Matter

The appellant's statement of the grounds of rejection to be reviewed on appeal is correct.

#### (6) Grounds of Rejection to be Reviewed on Appeal

The appellant's statement of the grounds of rejection to be reviewed on appeal is correct.

#### (7) Claims Appendix

The copy of the appealed claims contained in the Appendix to the brief is correct.

Art Unit: 3764

#### (8) Evidence Relied Upon

The following is a listing of the evidence (e.g., patents, publications, Official Notice, and admitted prior art) relied upon in the rejection of claims under appeal.

5997447

Giannelli et al

12-1999

#### (9) Grounds of Rejection

The following ground(s) of rejection are applicable to the appealed claims:

The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

Claims 1-25 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Giannelli et al.

The examiner reminds the applicant that in response to the functionality of his device and the disclosure of how his invention is being used: The examiner notes that although it is disclosed that Giannelli is to be used in a pushing motion Giannelli is also capable of being pulled by the user of the device. The user is not limited to, or confined to a seat when using the device.

As to the device of Giannelli et al disclosuring all of the claimed <u>elements</u> of the device Giannelli discloses a device including a four bar linkage first and second handles which travel in a diverging plane as the first and second handle portions are moved from a first position to a second position, said first and second handle mounted to the frame

Art Unit: 3764

forward and above the user, resistance mechanism said handle being vertically oriented a seat; and,

Wherein a users for arms remain substantially parallel to a supporting surface as the handles are moved.

As to applicants claims of a chest pad, element (27) meets the claim language of a pad.

As to the applicants claims of substantially linear. The abstract of Giannelli et al meets said claim language of slightly curvilinear. Neither of these limitations meets the rigid limitation of being 100% linear.

#### (10) Response to Argument

Applicant arguments argue that the claims claim, a device as traveling in a "linear path". The claims however as originally present and as now amended claim a device which has handles which travel in a <u>substantially</u> linear path. Given applicants claims of substantially linear, it would lead one to believe that the applicant is trying to cover or present a claim limitation which will encompass a path of travel which is broader in scope that straight. Absent any clarification by the applicant the examiner the **is of the** opinion that if the path of applicants invention is not completely linear then it must encompass the disclosure of Giannelli (447) of being slightly curvilinear.

The examiner can not patentably distinguish between the disclosure of slightly curvilear and the claim language substantially linear.

Art Unit: 3764

#### (11) Related Proceeding(s) Appendix

No decision rendered by a court or the Board is identified by the examiner in the Related Appeals and Interferences section of this examiner's answer.

Applicant claims of "forward" in claim 1 are relative to the orientation of a user.

For the above reasons, it is believed that the rejections should be sustained.

Respectfully submitted,

Jerome Donnelly 10-01-07

Conferees:

MICHAEL A. BROWN PRIMARY EXAMINER

PRIMARY EXAMINER

Cingl. D. She

ANGELA D. SYKES SUPERVISORY PATENT EXAMINER TECHNOLOGY CENTER 3700



#### UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
10/378,261	03/03/2003	03/03/2003 Raymond Giannelli		1700
	7590 10/29/201 NIDDICKS & OLIVER		EXAMINER	
RISSMAN HENDRICKS & OLIVERIO, LLP 100 Cambridge Street Suite 2101 BOSTON, MA 02114		DONNELLY, JEROME W		
			ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
		3764		
			NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
			10/29/2012	ELECTRONIC

# Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

mbien-aime@rhoiplaw.com cjoseph@rhoiplaw.com info@rhoiplaw.com

# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE BEFORE THE PATENT TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD Ex parte RAYMOND GIANNELLI

Appeal 2010-007582 Application 10/378,261 Technology Center 3700

Before JOHN C. KERINS, EDWARD A. BROWN, and BENJAMIN D. M. WOOD, *Administrative Patent Judges*.

BROWN, Administrative Patent Judge.

**DECISION ON APPEAL** 

#### STATEMENT OF THE CASE

Appellant appeals under 35 U.S.C. § 134(a) from the rejection of claims 1-25. (App. Br. 2). We have jurisdiction over this appeal under 35 U.S.C. § 6(b).

We AFFIRM.

#### THE CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER

Independent claims 1, 15, and 23 are on appeal. Claim 1, reproduced below, is illustrative of the claimed subject matter:

1. A row exercise machine comprising an input assembly including a first handle portion adapted to be moved from a first position to a second position by a pulling force exerted by a user on the first handle portion in a rowing motion, the input assembly defining a substantially linear path for the first handle portion from the first position to the second position.

#### THE REJECTION

Claims 1-25 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as unpatentable over Giannelli (US 5,997,447; iss. Dec. 7, 1999).

#### **ANALYSIS**

Appellant argues claims 1 and 15 as a group, and does not provide separate argument for any one of dependent claims 2-14, 16-22, 24, and 25. (App. Br. 5-10; Reply Br. 2-3). We select claim 1 as representative of the grouping, with claims 2-22, 24, and 25 standing or falling with claim 1. *See* 37 C.F.R. § 41.37(c)(1)(vii)(2011).

The Examiner found Giannelli discloses that its device is used in a pushing motion, but found that the device is also capable of being pulled by the user. (Ans. 3).<sup>2</sup> The Examiner also found that a user is not limited to, or

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> We herein refer to the Reply Brief dated May 27, 2008.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> We herein refer to the Examiner's Answer mailed May 2, 2008.

confined to, a seat when using Giannelli's device. (*Id.*). The Examiner further found that the claimed "substantially linear path" of the handle portion encompasses the slightly curvilinear (path) disclosed by Giannelli. (Ans. 4).

Appellant contends that the claims are directed to a row exercise machine that requires a pulling force (App. Br. 5-6), whereas Giannelli is directed to a chest press machine, and "[a] chest press exercise machine and motion is a different field of structure and exercise from a row machine." (App. Br. 7). Appellant further contends that Giannelli discloses that "the user *pushes* the handles through a *curvilinear path* from a chest to shoulder high rest position to a fully extended outward or forward position. This is *opposite* the presently claimed invention." (App. Br. 9).

Regarding Appellant's contention that Giannelli is not directed to a row exercise machine, the relevant issue is whether Giannelli's apparatus is capable of being used by exerting a pulling force on the handles in a rowing motion. Where the Patent and Trademark Office has reason to believe that a claimed functional limitation is an inherent characteristic of the prior art, the burden is shifted to Appellant to show that the prior art does not possess that characteristic. *See In re Best*, 562 F.2d 1252, 1254-55 (CCPA 1977) (quoting *In re Swinehart*, 439 F.2d 210, 212-13 (CCPA 1971)); *see also In re Spada*, 911 F.2d 705, 708 (Fed. Cir. 1990) ("when the PTO shows sound basis for believing that the products of the applicant and the prior art are the same, the applicant has the burden of showing that they are not.") In response to the Examiner's findings as to how Giannelli's apparatus is capable of being used, Appellant contends that Giannelli does not teach or suggest that "a user should stand on their feet and pull the arms," and that:

The entire teaching of the Giannelli '447 disclosure is precisely the opposite of what the examiner contends that it is capable doing or how it is capable of being used. Even further, if a user were to stand on their feet and pull the handles, this would defeat the very purpose of the machine and the entire teaching of the disclosure.

(Reply Br. 2). These contentions are not persuasive.

Firstly, although Giannelli does not explicitly disclose the use of its structure as a row exercise machine, the absence of disclosure in Giannelli relating to this use or function is not dispositive. Rather, "[i]t is well settled that the recitation of a new intended use for an old product does not make a claim to that old product patentable." *See In re Schreiber*, 128 F.3d 1473, 1477 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (citation omitted).

Secondly, Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument or evidence to show that Giannelli's apparatus is incapable of being used by exerting a pulling force on the handles in a rowing motion. In our view, it is reasonable to find that a user could face the handles 16a, 16b and support cushion 27 of Giannelli's apparatus and exert a pulling force on the handles 16a, 16b in a rowing motion, where the force is exerted in a direction that extends away from the support cushion 27 so as to move the handles 16a, 16b from a first position to a second position. (*See also* Giannelli, col. 4, 1. 66 – col. 5, 1. 10 and col. 5, 1l. 46-50). Although such use may not fully achieve the "purpose" of Giannelli's apparatus, Appellant has not shown that the apparatus could not be used in such manner.

Appellant also contends that the Examiner's "comment that a linear path cannot be sufficiently distinguished from a curvilinear path does not take into account any of the distinct structures or functions of the claimed

apparatus." (App. Br. 9). As noted *supra*, however, the Examiner found that the claims recite a "*substantially* linear path" (emphasis added). Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument or evidence as to why the claimed "*substantially* linear path" (emphasis added) should be construed to not encompass Giannelli's "*slightly* curvilinear path" (emphasis added). The term "substantially" allows for the first handle portion to travel in a path that deviates from a perfectly linear path. In addition, claim 1 does not recite any limitation as to how far the first handle portion must move "from the first position to the second position." It is reasonable to find that as this distance decreases for movement of the handles in Giannelli's apparatus, the path would increasingly correspond to a linear path.

Appellant also contends that Giannelli is non-analogous prior art. (App. Br. 9; Reply Br. 5). The two *separate* tests for determining whether a reference is analogous prior art for purposes of a rejection under 35 U.S.C. § 103 are: (1) whether the reference is from the same field of endeavor, regardless of the problem addressed; and (2) *if* the reference is not within the inventor's field of endeavor, whether the reference is reasonably pertinent to the particular problem with which the inventor is involved. *In re Bigio*, 381 F.3d 1320, 1325 (Fed. Cir. 2004). At the least, Appellant has not provided any persuasive argument as to why Giannelli does not meet test (1). The claimed invention is directed to the field of apparatuses for exercising the upper body. (Spec. para. [0003]). Giannelli is also directed to this same field of endeavor. (*See* Giannelli, col. 1, ll. 15-17). As such, we agree that Giannelli qualifies as analogous prior art.

In view of the above, we sustain the rejection of claim 1, as well as claims 2-22, 24, and 25.

Application 10/378,261

Claim 23 is directed to a row exercise machine comprising, *inter alia*, a "user support structure mounted to the frame including a seat and a *chest pad*." (Emphasis added). The Examiner found Giannelli's support cushion 27 meets the claim limitation of a "chest pad." (Ans. 4). Appellant contends that "[t]he purpose of the chest [pad] is to oppose the *row-pulling motion* on the handles. No such component is present or even usable in the . . . Giannelli . . . apparatus." (App. Br. 7). This contention is not persuasive.

Claim 23 does not recite any structural limitation for the claimed "chest pad" that Giannelli's support cushion 27 lacks. In addition, the claim does not specify the location of the chest pad as opposing the row-pulling motion on the handles. Unclaimed features of the row exercise machine cannot be relied upon for patentability. *See In re Self*, 671 F.2d 1344, 1348 (Fed. Cir. 1982). As Appellant has not apprised us of any error in the Examiner's findings and conclusion, we sustain the rejection of claim 23.

#### **DECISION**

The Examiner's decision rejecting claims 1-25 is AFFIRMED.

No time period for taking any subsequent action in connection with this appeal may be extended under 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a). *See* 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a)(1)(iv).

#### **AFFIRMED**

ke



#### US005997447A

# United States Patent [19]

#### Giannelli et al.

[11] Patent Number: 5,997,447 [45] Date of Patent: \*Dec. 7, 1999

[54]	CHEST P EXERCIS BODY	RESS APPARATUS FOR SING REGIONS OF THE UPPER
[75]	Inventors:	Raymond Giannelli, Franklin, Mass.; Jerry K. Leipheimer, Jamestown, Pa.
[73]	Assignee:	Cybex International, Inc., Medway. Mass.
[*]	Notice:	This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.
[21]	Appl. No.:	: 08/941,455
[22]	Filed:	Sep. 30, 1997
	Rel	ated U.S. Application Data
[60]	Provisional	application No. 60/025,529, Sep. 30, 1996.
[51] [52] [58]	U.S. Cl Field of S	A63B 21/06; A63B 23/035 482/100; 482/136 482/72, 73, 94, 97–101, 112, 113, 129, 130, 133, 135–139
[56]		References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

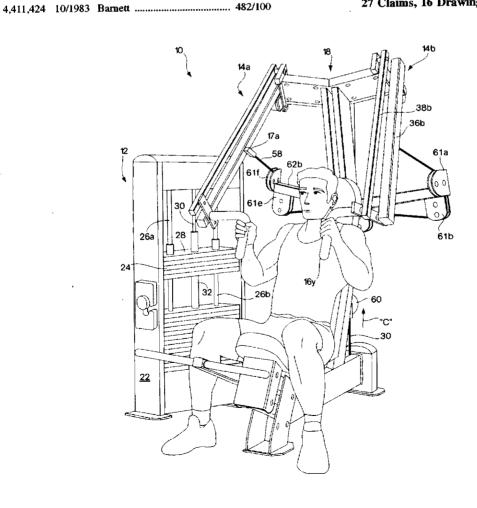
5,336,148	8/1994	Ish, III 48	2/97 X
5,437,589	8/1995	Habing 482	/100 R
5,554,089	9/1996	Jones	482/97
5,582,564	12/1996	Nichols, Sr. et al	482/97
5,707,323	1/1998	Simonson	482/97

Primary Examiner—John Mulcahy Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Wolf, Greenfield & Sacks, P.C.

#### [57] ABSTRACT

A chest press exercise apparatus is provided. The chest press apparatus includes a selectable weight mechanism and a support member which pivotably supports a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms. The four-bar linkage mechanisms are pivotably mounted at their rearward ends about axes which are disposed at an angle relative to a horizontal plane, i.e. are tilted relative to vertical, such that a pair of elongated bars of the four-bar linkage mechanisms travel in planes which are tilted relative to vertical. The tilted planes through which the four-bar linkage mechanisms travel enable the handles to travel along a slightly curvilinear downwardly diverging path which simulates as natural a human musculoskeletal upward pushing motion as possible.

#### 27 Claims, 16 Drawing Sheets



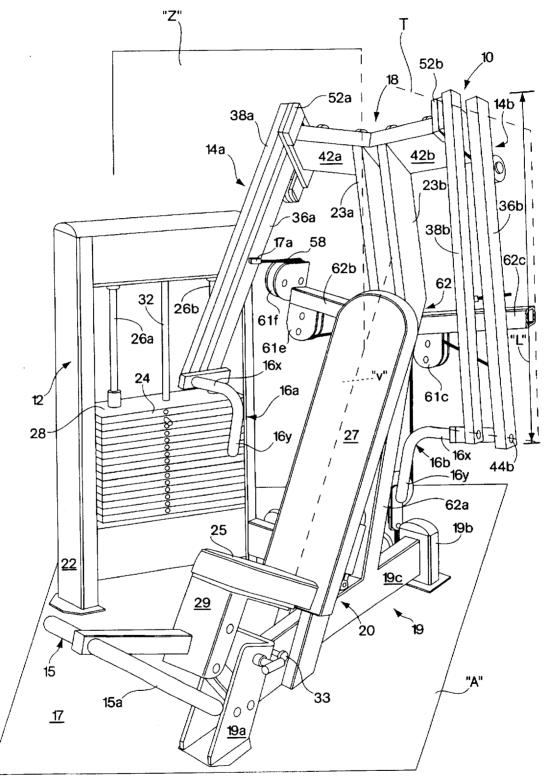


Fig. 1

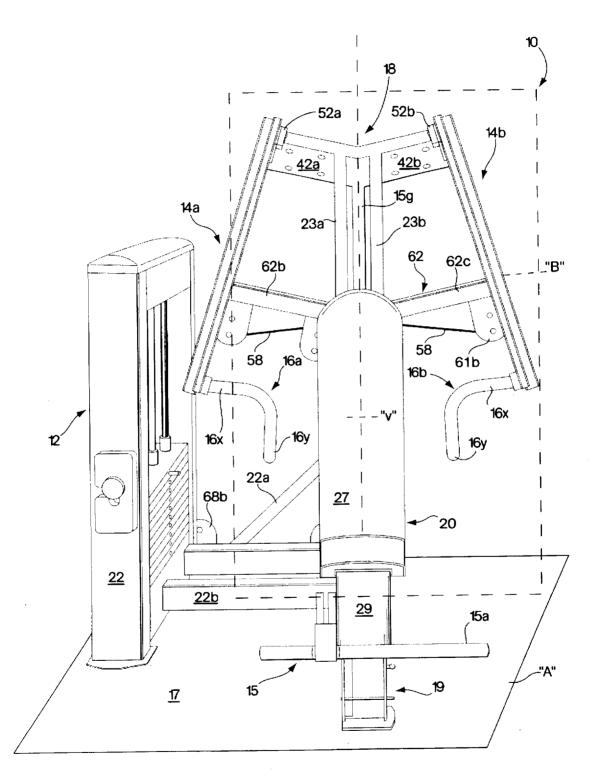
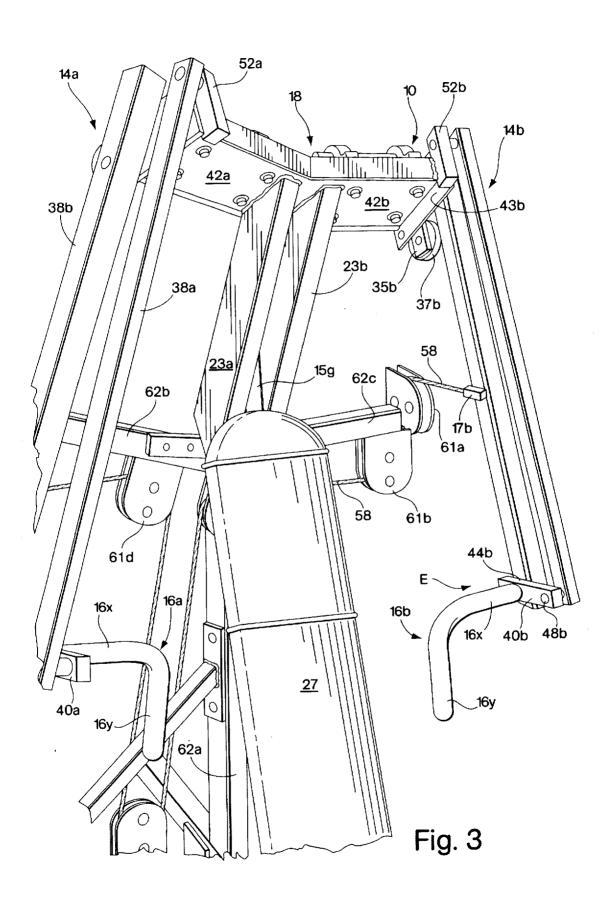
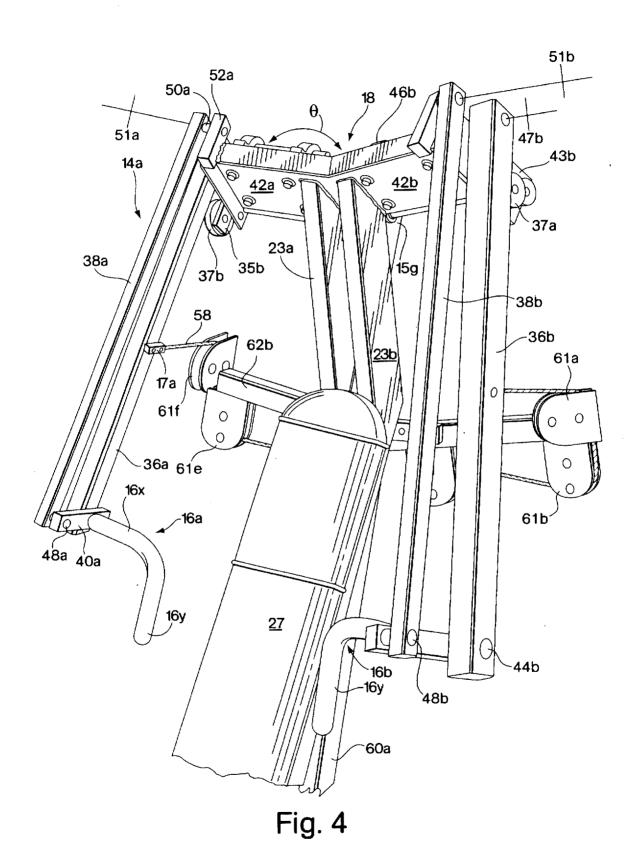


Fig. 2





A000177

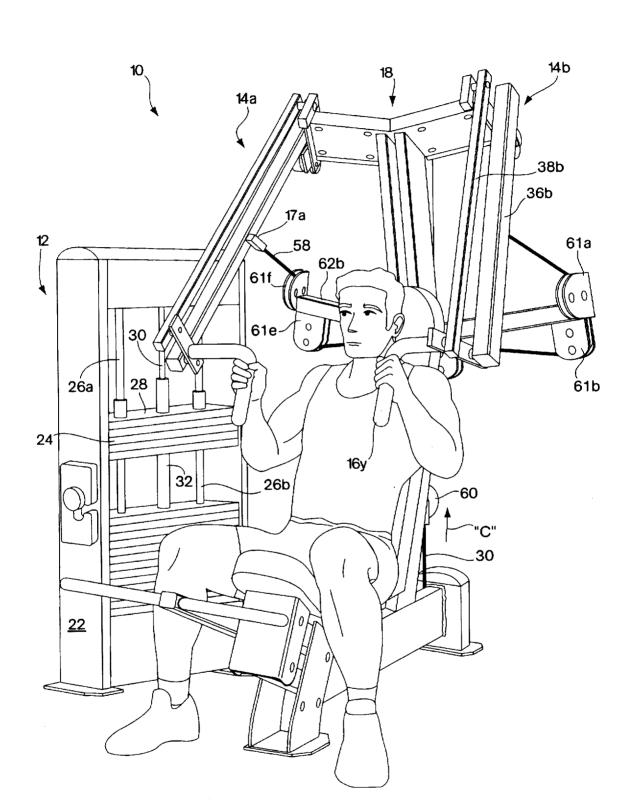
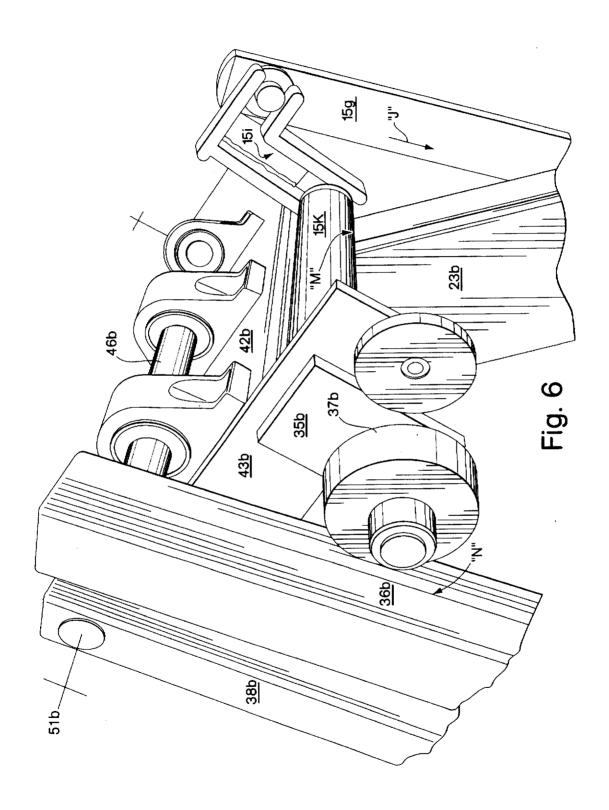


Fig. 5



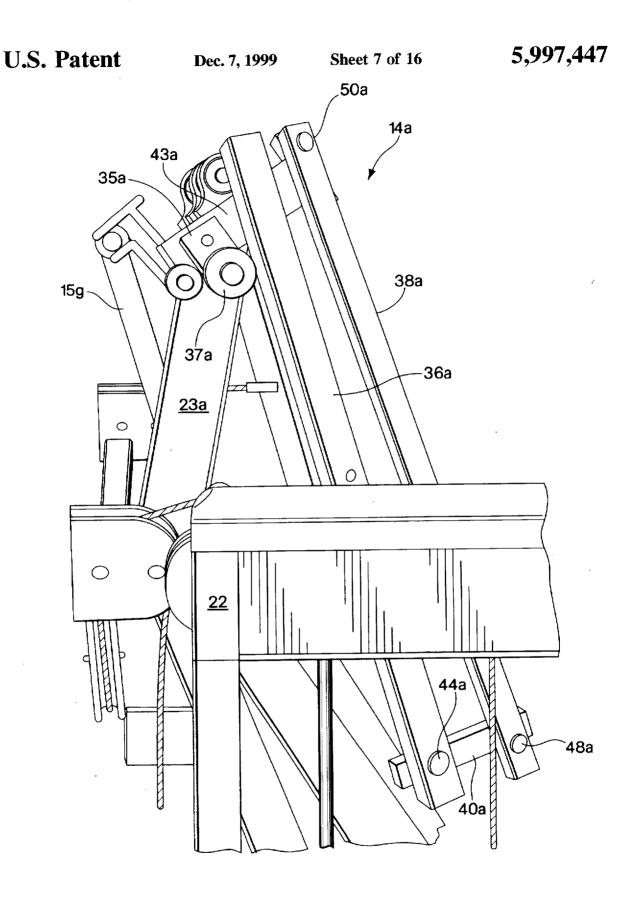
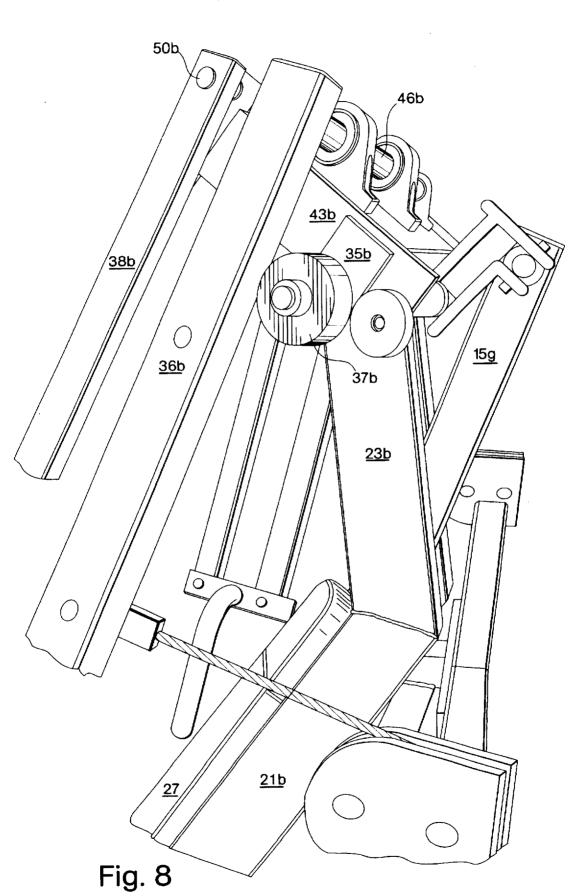


Fig. 7



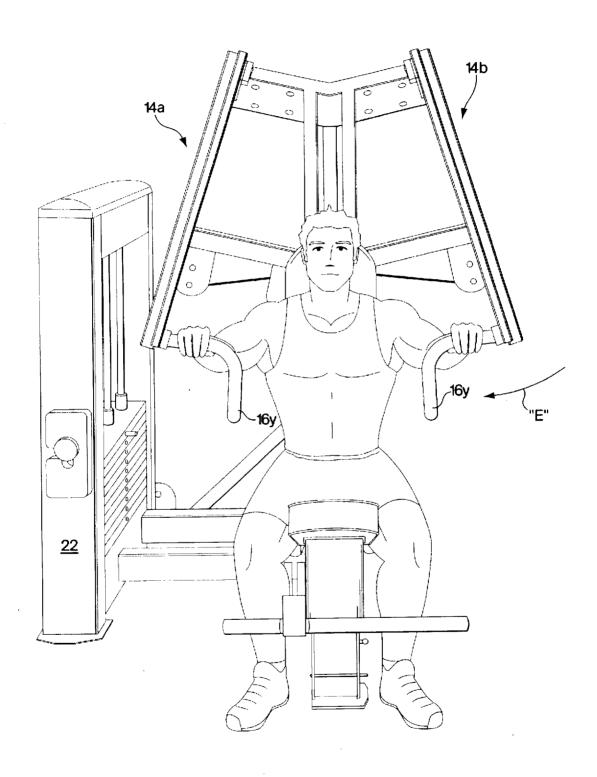


Fig. 9

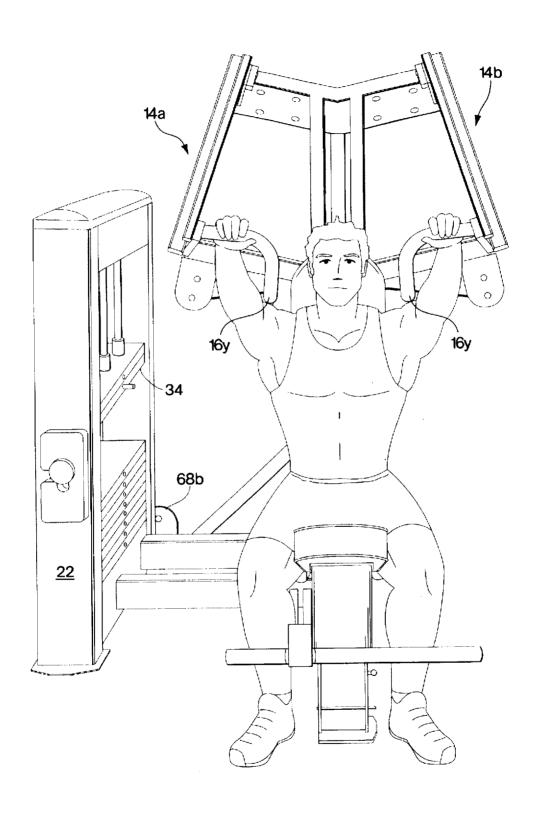
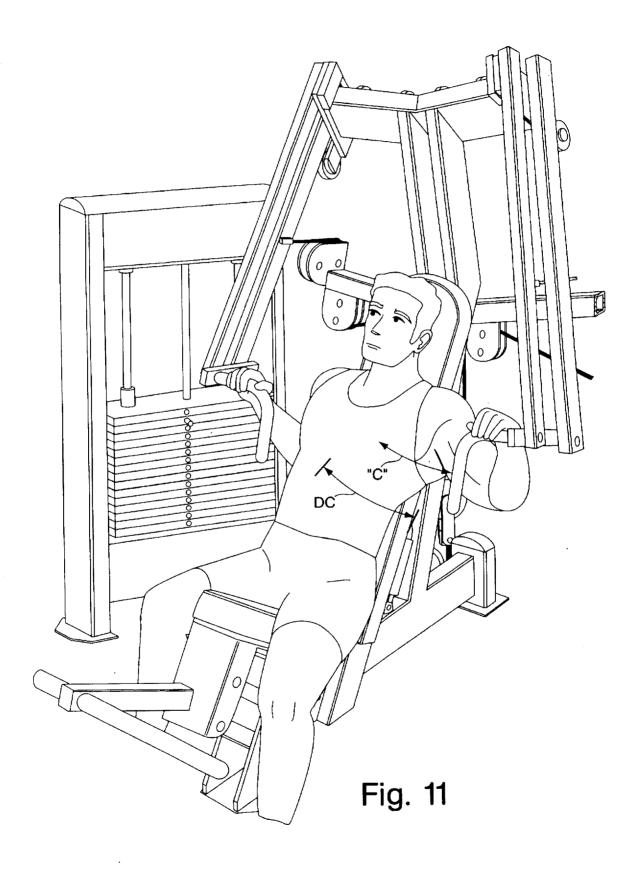
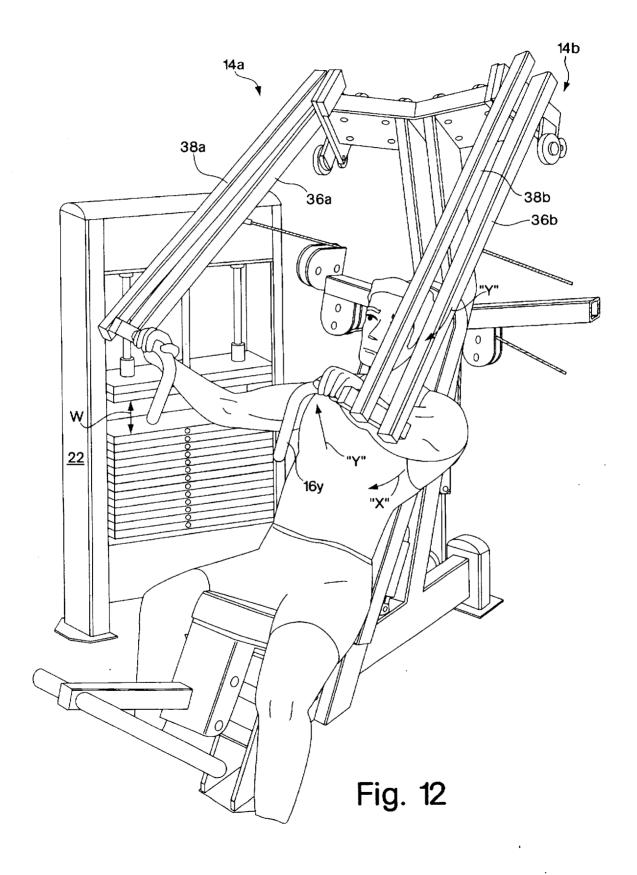
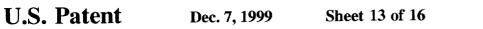


Fig. 10







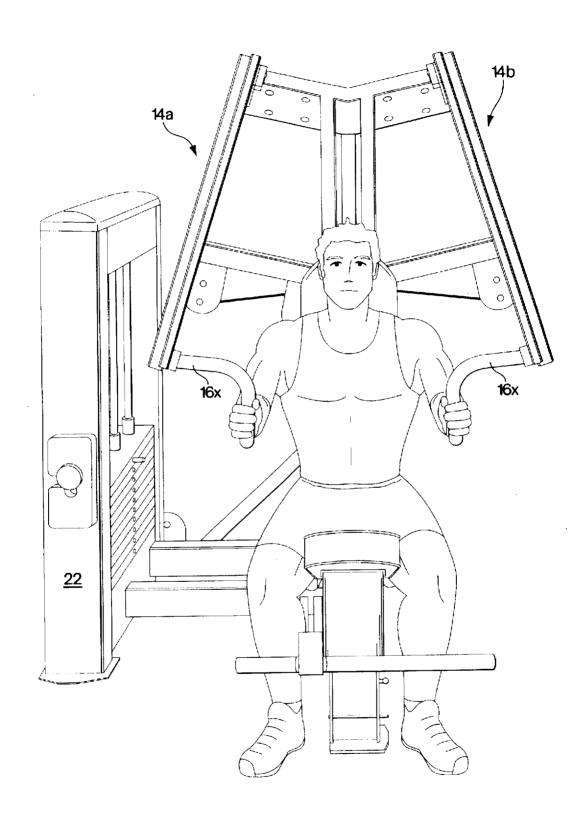


Fig. 13

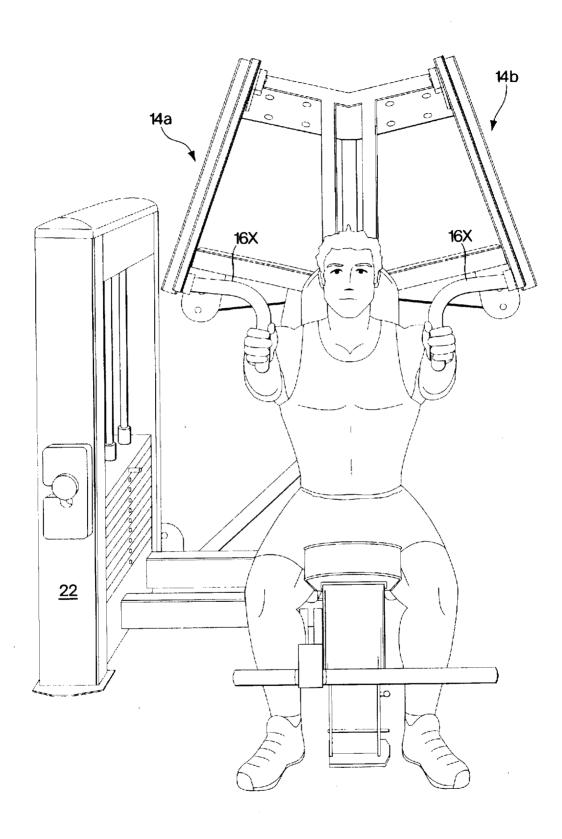


Fig. 14

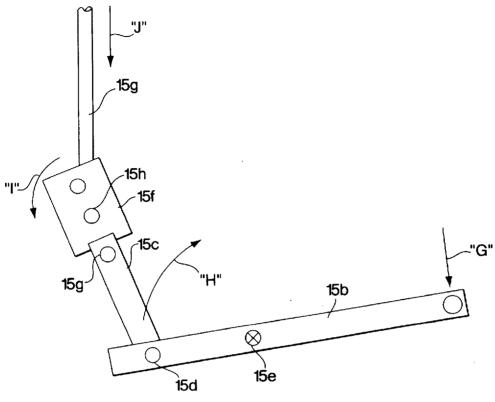


Fig. 15

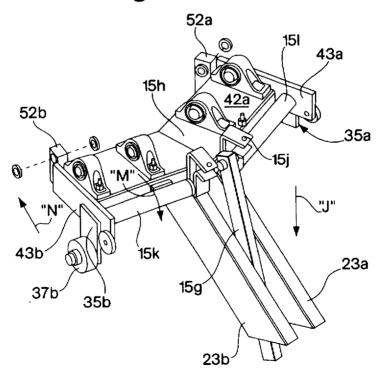


Fig. 16

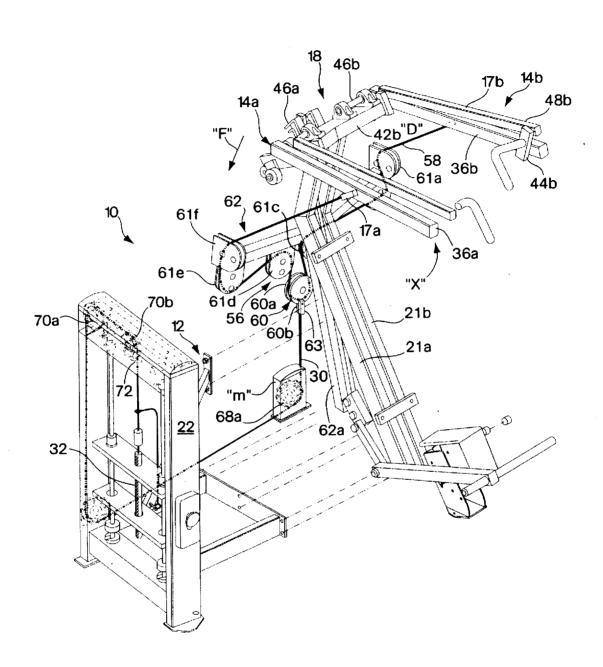


Fig. 17

#### CHEST PRESS APPARATUS FOR EXERCISING REGIONS OF THE UPPER RODY

#### RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims priority under 35 U.S.C.§ 119 (e) to commonly-owned, co-pending U.S. provisional patent application Ser. No. 60/025,529 entitled "Chest Press Apparatus for Exercising Regions of the Upper Body", filed Sep. 30, 1996 by Giannelli et al., which is incorporated herein by  $^{10}$ reference in its entirety.

#### BACKGROUND

#### 1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to an apparati for exercising 15 regions of the upper body, and more particularly to an improved chest press exercise machine.

#### 2. Background of the Invention

A variety of exercise machines which utilize resistance or 20 strength training have become very popular in recent years. Such strength machines are often used in place of conventional free weights to exercise a variety of muscles within the human body. Most strength machines are designed with by combining adjustable weight resistance with ease of use, while also attempting to maintain proper biomechanical alignment of the user's joints.

While such machines offer convenience and other benefits to the user in comparison to free weights, conventional 30 designs typically include a frame superstructure for providing symmetrical balance and support for various levers and weight components of the machines. Such conventional frame superstructures generally result in machines that are many of such conventional machines may be inconvenient to users performing more than one repetition of an exercise with varying weights, as the user is generally required to be physically removed from the machine in order to place before performing each set.

Another limitation found in conventional strength machines utilizing selectable weights is the inability of the user to perform high velocity exercises. In such conventional machines the weights have inertial problems at higher 45 speeds which can result in inconsistent resistance through a complete range of motion, therefore, users are encouraged to perform the exercises slowly. Training at lower velocities produces greater increases in muscular force at slow speeds for the user. Therefore, low velocity training only improves 50 an individual's capabilities at slower speeds. In contrast, training at higher contractal velocities produces increases in an individual's muscular force at all speeds of contraction at and below the training velocity. Therefore, high velocity training improves an individual's functional capabilities at 55 normal contractal velocities, i.e. velocities utilized for activities such as golfing and tennis which are more likely to be a part of every day living. Although there are many forms of strength training which allow for higher velocity training. the resistance mechanisms of such equipment generally do 60 not include selectable weights, these devices do not utilize selectable weights as part of their resistance mechanism, and many users prefer training with selectable weights as opposed to other forms of resistance training, for example, resistance bands.

Conventional resistance equipment may also be limited by designs that prevent users from maintaining the proper

biomechanical alignment of joints through a complete range of motion. A variety of machines have been proposed to improve the range of motion of the user, in order to make the exercise performed through the range more effective. Such machines are disclosed in, but not limited to, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,437,589 and 5,273,504. However, the equipment disclosed in such references does not consistently provide proper biomechanical alignment of the user's joints through the complete range of motion.

Therefore, a need exists in the field of resistance training for selectable weight equipment that allows users to maintain the proper biomechanical alignment of joints through a complete range of motion, while performing exercises at high contractal velocities.

#### SUMMARY

In accordance with the invention there is provided a chest press exercise apparatus comprising a selectable weight mechanism and a support mechanism which pivotally supports a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms. The selectable weight mechanism is disposed in an off-center position relative to the exercise ready seating position of the user, such that the user can readily access and manually adjust/ select the degree of weight force from a seated, exercise the goal of optimizing resistance training benefits to the user 25 ready position. The selectable weight mechanism is preferably mounted in a relatively short weight support frame. typically less than about 3.5 feet in height. The four bar linkage mechanisms are pivotally mounted at their rearward ends about axes which are disposed at an angle relative to a horizontal plane, i.e. are tilted relative to vertical, such that a pair of elongated bars of the four bar linkage mechanisms travel in planes which are tilted relative to vertical. A pair of handles are rigidly connected to the forward most bar component of the four-bar linkage mechanisms such that the oversized in height, width, and architecture. In addition, 35 handles follow the same pivoting movement as the forward most bar component, as the four bar linkage mechanism are pivoted around the rearward mounted, tilted axes. When utilizing a neutral grip the four-bar linkage mechanisms enable the user to maintain the proper biomechanical alignweights on, or otherwise select the desired weight force 40 ment of the joints. If a horizontal grip is utilized then the tilted axes maintain the proper alignment of the wrists. The tilted planes through which the four bar linkage mechanisms travel enable the handles to travel along a slightly curvilinear outwardly converging path which simulates as natural a human musculoskeletal outward pushing motion as possible. The four bar linkage mechanisms are preferably mounted to an upright support. A cable and pulley are interconnected between the four-bar linkage mechanisms and the shortened selectable weight mechanism such that as the four bar linkage mechanisms are pivoted around their corresponding primary axis the selected weight is pulled through a relatively short vertical path, preferably about 1 foot. The distance between the point where the cables are connected to the four bar linkage mechanisms and the forward most bar of the four bar linkage mechanisms to which the handles are connected is such that the user has increased leverage control over the pulling of the selected weight resistance.

Accordingly, the present invention is directed to a chest press exercise apparatus that includes a base member and a support member extending from the base member. A pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms are supported by the support member. Each of the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms includes a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis. The primary axes are disposed at an angle with respect to each other. The primary and follower lever arms lie in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to a vertical plane.

which vertical plane is perpendicular to a horizontal plane underlying the base member. The apparatus also includes a weight mechanism operatively associated with the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms. The primary and follower lever arms travel in the common plane as the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position while maintaining a correct biomechanical positioning of the user.

In another aspect of the invention, the chest press exercise apparatus includes a handle lever arm operatively associated with both of the primary and follower arms of each of the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms. A handle extends from each handle lever arms, each handle extending outwardly and perpendicularly from the handle lever arm, and curving outwardly and downwardly therefrom at a 90 degree angle. The handles travel in a slightly curvilinear upwardly converging and downwardly diverging path as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position, while maintaining the correct biomechanical positioning of the user.

In another aspect of the present invention, the support 20 member includes at least one post member connected to the base member extending upwardly behind a seat. The first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms are supported on the at least one post member above and behind the seat. The primary and follower lever arms travel in the common plane 25 as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position.

In another aspect of the invention, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each have a length, and are each pivotally supported at a first selected position along the length, each having a handle connected to a second selected position along the length. The apparatus includes a seat which positions a user in a disposition relative to the handles such that the handles are manually engageable by the user for pushing the handles between the first position and the second position in a chest press motion.

In another aspect of the invention, the chest press exercise apparatus includes a handle lever arm operatively associated with each of the primary and follower lever arms. The handle lever arm includes a manually engageable handle for moving the four-bar linkage mechanisms between the first and second positions. The handle is disposed in a predetermined gripping orientation in the starting position such that the operative association of the handle lever arm with the primary and follower arms maintains the handle extension in the predetermined gripping orientation during displacement of the four-bar linkage arms between the first and second positions.

In another aspect of the invention, at least one of the primary and follower lever arms of each of the four-bar 50 linkage mechanisms is operatively associated with a cable and a selected portion of a selectable weight stack. The selected portion of the weight stack is displaced by a distance upon movement of the four-bar linkage arms from a first position to a second position.

In another aspect of the invention, the primary and follower lever arms each have a length, and a handle interconnected to a first position along the length of at least one of the four-bar linkage mechanisms. The cable is interconnected to a second position along the length of at least 60 one of the four-bar linkage mechanisms. The first and second interconnection positions of the handle and the cable are selected such that the handle travels through a distance less than about 60% of the displacement distance of the selected portion of the weight stack upon displacement of the four-65 bar linkage mechanisms from a first position to a second position.

4

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

- FIG. 1 is a front-right perspective view of a chest press exercise apparatus according to the invention;
- FIG. 2 is a front view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing the laterally connected weight stack in a semi-perspective disposition;
- FIG. 3 is a left-front perspective view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a detail close-up of the control support 10 bar relative to the user seat;
  - FIG. 4 is a right-front perspective view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a detail of the interconnection of cables to the four-bar linkage arms;
- outwardly and downwardly therefrom at a 90 degree angle. The handles travel in a slightly curvilinear upwardly converging and downwardly diverging path as the four-bar ready position;

  FIG. 5 is a front-right perspective view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a user seated in an exercise chest press ready position;
  - FIG. 6 is a perspective view of the pivotally mounted portion of one of the pair of four-bar linkage arms of the FIG. 1 apparatus;
  - FIG. 7 is a right side view of the rear-upper portion of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing the tilted pivot axis mounting of one of the four-bar linkage arms to the central support bar member of the FIG. 1 apparatus;
  - FIG. 8 is a left side view of the rear-upper portion of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing the tilted pivot axis mounting of one of the four-bar linkage arms to the central support bar member of the FIG. 1 apparatus;
  - FIG. 9 is a front view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a user seated in and grasping a horizontal extension of the handle bars of the FIG. 1 apparatus in a starting chest press exercise position;
  - FIG. 10 is a front view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a user seated in and grasping a horizontal extension of the handle bars of the apparatus in a second extended four-bar linkage arm pivoted position;
  - FIG. 11 is a left-side perspective view of the FIG. 9 view; FIG. 12 is a left-side perspective view of the FIG. 10 view;
  - FIG. 13 is a front view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a user seated in and grasping a vertical extension of the handle bars of the FIG. 1 apparatus in a starting chest press exercise position;
  - FIG. 14 is a front view of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing a user seated in and is grasping a vertical extension of the handle bars of the apparatus in a second extended four-bar linkage arm pivoted position;
  - FIG. 15 is a side schematic view of an arrangement of interconnected levers which interconnect a foot pedal to the pivotable four-bar linkage arms for initially positioning the four-bar linkage arms;
  - FIG. 16 is a top right-side perspective view of the upper-side of the central support bar of the FIG. 1 apparatus showing the pivot mounting brackets and pivot wheel stop mechanisms;
  - FIG. 17 is an upper right-side perspective view of the FIG. 1 apparatus without the seat and base components showing the four-bar linkage arms in an extended pivoted position and showing the interconnection and positioning of the cable and pulleys between the four-bar linkage arms and weight stack.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Referring initially to FIGS. 1, 2, and 17, there is illustrated a perspective and a front view of a chest press exercise

machine 10, according to one embodiment of the present invention. Chest press exercise machine 10 preferably includes a support 18 for supporting a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms 14a and 14b as well as for supporting a seat 20, a selectable weight mechanism 12 operatively connected to each of the pair of four bar linkages 14a and 14b, and a pair of handles 16a and 16b extending from the four bar linkages 14a and 14b, respectively. For purposes of the present description, reference signs with the "b" suffix designate mirror images of those with an "a" suffix.

In the present embodiment, support 18 is preferably constructed of a rigid material such as steel, and includes a base member 19, a pair of post members 21a and 21b (FIG. 17), a cross bar assembly 62, and a pair of extensions 23a and 23b, all of which combine to form the structural elements of support 18. Base member 19 preferably includes a first support member 19a, a second support member 19b and a mounting member 19c disposed therebetween. First and second support members 19a and 19b preferably rest on a substantially horizontal, flat surface, such as the floor 17. Preferably a foot start 15 is located adjacent first support member 19a so that a user can easily grasp handles 16a and 16b in order to begin exercising, as described in greater detail herein below. In the present embodiment mounting member 19c is preferably supported at one end by first support member 19a, is supported at an opposite end by second support member 19b, and is preferably spaced from and substantially parallel to the floor 17.

With continued reference to FIGS. 1, 2, and 17, post members 21a and 21b preferably extend at an angle, which 30 is approximately 30° from vertical axis "v" (FIG. 2) in the present embodiment, and operate to support seat 20 in a reclined position. Cross bar assembly 62 preferably includes a mounting post 62a and a pair of cross bar members 62b with respect to mounting post 62a. Extensions 23a and 23b are preferably mounted to and extend from post members 21a and 21b, respectively. In the present embodiment, extensions 23a and 23b extend from post members 21a and 21b at an angle which is inclined toward the forward facing 40 direction of the user. It will be understood to one of skill in the art that any number of structural elements, having a variety of shapes, sizes and orientations, may be utilized to form support 18, as long as the structural orientation supports the four bar linkages as the user exercises against a 45 motion. selected resistance.

Referring again to FIG. 1, seat 20 preferably includes a seat cushion 25 and a support cushion 27, is supported in a reclined position, and is preferably adjustable between a plurality of vertical positions. Seat cushion 25 is supported 50 by an angled seat mount 29 while support cushion 27 is supported by angled post members 21a and 21b. Seat 20 is mounted at an angle, which is approximately 30° in the present embodiment, with respect to a plane perpendicular to floor 17, so as to properly orientate the user for perfor- 55 mance of a chest press exercise motion. In the present embodiment, adjustment of seat 20 is preferably enabled through a four-bar, gas-assist seat adjustment, although other methods of adjustment, for example hydraulic, may be utilized. A pin 33 is insertable through each of a plurality of 60 holes, in order to select the desired height of the seat. As with support 18, seat 20 may be designed in a variety of configurations and dimensions, and may, or may not be adjustable.

Referring to FIGS. 1, 15, and 16, foot start 15 is prefer- 65 ably located adjacent seat 20, and when activated by a user, allows the user to easily grasp handles 16a and 16b in order

to begin exercising, as is known in the art. Foot start 15 preferably includes an engagement rod 15a mounted to a first, forward end of assist lever 15b such that engagement of rod 15a by a user in the direction of arrow "G" moves the first end of assist lever also in the direction of arrow "G". Assist lever 15b is connected at a second end, opposite the first end, to one end of linkage 15c, by pin 15d, such that upon engagement of rod 15a by the user in the direction of arrow "G", linkage 15c moves in the direction indicated by 10 arrow "H". Assist lever 15b is further connected to support 18 by pivot 15e. Linkage 15c is, in turn, connected an opposite end to center link 15f by pin 15g, such that movement of linkage 15c in the direction of arrow "H" pivots center link 15f in the direction indicated by arrow "I". Center link 15f is connected to support 18 by rod 15h, and is connected at a second end to bar 15g, such that pivoting center link 15f in the direction of arrow "I", moves bar 15g in a downward direction as indicated by arrow "J". The movement of rod 15g in the direction of arrow "J" moves rockers 15i and 15j and hence axes 15k and 151 which are connected thereto, in the direction of arrow "M". Axes 15k and 151 are, in turn, rotationally connected to corresponding stop arms 35a and 35b mounted thereto, with rollers 37a and 37b of stop arms 35a and 35b abutting corresponding primary lever arms 36a and 36b (FIGS. 4 and 6). Movement of axes 15k and 151 therefore moves stop arms 35a and 35b, and rollers 37a and 37b, in the direction of arrow "N" to move the four bar linkages 14a and 14b toward the user until the user is able to grip the handles 16a and 16b.

With continued reference to FIGS. 1 and 2, selectable weight mechanism 12 is preferably a high-mass, short-travel (HMST) weight stack. The high-mass, short-travel weight mechanism 12 provides the user with a higher mass weight stack and a shorter range of travel than conventional weight and 62c mounted transverse to and preferably at an angle 35 stacks. By increasing the mass and decreasing the range of travel, the speed of the selected weight is decreased during use, without slowing down the speed of the user, as described hereinbelow. This allows an individual to utilize strength training to train at higher contractal velocities s without the associated negative inertial effect found in conventional selectable weights, because as the speed of the weight is decreased, so is the negative inertial effect. Overcoming the negative inertial effect, in turn, results in smooth and predictable resistance through a complete range of

As shown in FIGS. 2 and 5, selectable weight mechanism 12 is preferably disposed in an off-center position relative to the exercise ready, seating position of the user such that the user can readily access and manually adjust/select the degree of weight force from a seated, exercise ready position. In the present embodiment, weight mechanism 12 stands approximately 35 inches in height and preferably includes a housing 22 and a plurality of selectable weight plates 24 supported therein. Housing 22 is preferably supported by a stabilizer bar 22a and brace 22b which are both attached to support 18. The total number of selectable weight plates 24 supported within housing 22 are referred to collectively as a "weight stack." In the present embodiment, weight plates 24 are each approximately 0.75 inches thick and are uniform in weight, each plate weighing approximately 20 lbs. A top weight plate 28 is operatively connected to a cable 30 and a central rod 32. The central rod 32 extends in a downward direction from top weight plate 28 through each of the consecutive weight plates 24. A pin 34 (FIG. 10) is insertable through a transverse hole in each plate, and into the central rod to select the desired amount of weight for the exercise routine to be performed, as is known in the art. Weights 24 are

movable in a first and second substantially vertical direction along guide rods 26a and 26b, respectively, as will be described in greater detail herein below.

With reference to FIG. 12, in the present embodiment, the selectable weight plates 24 preferably have a total mass of 5 400 lbs. which is twice the conventional mass (200 lbs) utilized with a chest press machine. Also in the present embodiment, the selected weight plates 24 travel at approximately half the speed of a selected weight plate of a conventional chest press machine, therefore, the selected weight also is subjected to approximately half the acceleration over approximately half the distance of a conventional selected weight plate utilized with a chest press machine. As shown in FIGS. 11 and 12, the distance "W" that the selected weight plates travel is approximately 55% of the distance 15 "DC" traveled by a user's hand, in the present embodiment, as measured by the distance between the vertical positions of handles 16a and 16b at the start and stop of the exercise. The distance "DC" is a function of the length of the user's arm. The distance a user's hand travels from the beginning to the 20 end of one repetition of the exercise defines a complete range of motion. Although the mass is doubled, the total load the user feels during the performance of an exercise routine is the same as with a conventional chest press machine. This effect is achieved by changing the mechanical advantage to 25 increase the leverage the user has over the selected weight plates from 1.8:1 (force exerted by user:weight) in a conventional system, to a 0.9:1 ratio in the present embodiment. The ratio may be changed by attaching cable 58 (FIG. 17) at an appropriate attachment point along primary lever arm 30 36a and 36b, in the present embodiment, as determined by conventional engineering techniques.

Referring now to FIGS. 4. 6. and 17, pulley blocks 17a and 17b preferably attach cable 58 at a point approximately mid-way between first pivot points 44a and 44b and second 35 pivot points 46a and 46b of primary lever arms 36a and 36b, respectively. Pulley blocks 17a and 17b are attached at approximately 55% of the distance between first pivot points 44a and 44b and second pivot points 46a and 46b, as measured starting from the second pivot points 46a and 46b, 40 in the present embodiment. The total distance between the pivot points is in the range of approximately 25 to 35 inches, and is approximately 30.5 inches in length in the present embodiment. It should be understood that the placement of leverage depends upon the percentage increase in the mass of the weights, as compared to conventional weights. The criteria for determining the placement of cable 58 is that while performing an exercise on the chest press exercise apparatus of the present invention, the user should feel a 50 resistance comparable to that felt while performing an exercise on a conventional chest press exercise apparatus while being able to exercise at higher contractal velocities. The increase in mass is, in turn, determined by several considerations, such as cost, structural load placed on the 55 apparatus by the mass, as well as the ability to readily achieve the desired leverage for a given mass.

With reference to FIGS. 1, 2 and 4, four bar linkage mechanisms 14a and 14b having a length "L", are pivotally mounted at their rearward ends to support 18, and are 60 operatively associated with the selectable weight mechanism 12, as will be described in greater detail herein below. Four bar linkages 14a and 14b are symmetrical in construction, therefore, the below detailed description of linkage 14a is applicable to symmetrical linkage 14b as well. 65 Four bar linkage 14a preferably includes primary lever arm 36a, a follower lever arm 38a, a handle lever arm 40a, and

a support arm 42a. Preferably, the primary and follower lever arms lie and travel in a common plane which is tilted at an angle relative to a vertical plane, where the vertical plane is perpendicular to horizontal plane "A" underlying the base 19 of the apparatus. In the present embodiment, for ease of illustration, the tilted common plane is illustrated as plane "T" (FIG. 1), which is tilted with respect to the vertical plane "Z", where plane "Z" intersects the y- axis, and is perpendicular to plane "A", and where the y- axis bisects the seat 27. Although the common titled plane "T" is illustrated with reference to the vertical plane "Z", any vertical may be used as a reference plane for the angular disposition of the four-bar linkages, provided such plane is perpendicular to the horizontal plane "A" underlying the apparatus, and on which it is supported, such as, for example, plane "B".

The primary lever arm 36a is preferably an elongated bar which is pivotally connected at a first, forward end to the handle lever arms 40a, by a pin 44a (FIG. 7) and is pivotally connected at second, rearward end, opposite the first end, by primary axle 46a (FIG. 6), which is axially disposed about primary axis 47a (FIG. 4). The primary axle 46a is, in turn, mounted to the support arm 42a. In the present embodiment, the support arm 42a preferably includes a plate 43a, having a stop arm 35a mounted thereto. The stop arm 35a includes a roller 37a which engages primary lever arm 36a when the machine 10 is not in use, limits the downward movement of four bar linkages 14a and b in the direction of arrow "E". and assists in the grasping of handles 16a and 16b, as described hereinabove.

Follower lever arm 38a is likewise preferably an elongated bar which is pivotally connected at one end to handle lever arm 40a at a first pivot point 48a, by any suitable fastening device, such as a bolt, and is pivotally connected at its opposite, rearward end by secondary axle 50a (FIG. 4). which is axially disposed about secondary axis 51a. The secondary axle 50a is, in turn, mounted to the support arm 42a. The distance between the first pivot point 48a and the second pivot point 50a of follower lever arm is preferably equal to the distance between the pivot points of the primary lever arm. In the present embodiment the distance between pivot points 48a and 50a of follower lever arm is approximately 30.5 inches, although alternate lengths are acceptable for both the primary and follower lever arms. In the present embodiment, the distance between primary axle 46a and cable 58 depends upon the desired leverage, and the desired 45 secondary axle 50a is 3.75 inches. Also in the present embodiment, secondary axle 50a is mounted to block 52a (FIG. 2) which is part of support arm 42a. Block 52a is preferably welded to a support arm 42a, but may be attached in any suitable manner as long as block 52a remains stationary while supporting follower lever arm 38a. Alternatively, secondary axle 50a may be directly mounted to support arm 42a.

In the present embodiment, the primary axes 47a and 47bare preferably disposed at an angle with respect to a horizontal plane "A" underlying machine 10. Angle  $\theta$  is the angle disposed between the angled primary axes 47a and 47b and is in the range of 135 to 165 degrees, and is preferably 150 degrees for a chest press machine according to the present embodiment. The primary concern with regard to the angle  $\theta$  is that convergence take place in the upward. or pushing direction. In determining the preferred angle employed, several considerations are taken into account, including, but not limited to, the starting and ending points of a handles 16a and 16b (FIG. 1), which allows the correct biomechanical positioning of the user's wrists and forearms to be maintained. "Proper" or "correct biomechanical positioning," as used herein, means that the orientation of

the user's wrist and forearm remains relatively constant from the start to finish of a chest press exercise motion, i.e., throughout a complete range of motion. This may also mean that it is not necessary for the user to adjust their hand position on the handles while exercising, since the handles do not twist, as in conventional exercise machines. These points help determine the maximum angle  $\theta$ , or in other terms, the maximum upward convergence of the four bar linkages 14a and 14b. In the present embodiment, the secondary axles 50a and 50b are preferably spaced from and are parallel to the primary axles 46a and 46b. The primary axes 47a and 47b are also preferably disposed parallel with respect to a plane "B", plane "B" being perpendicular to horizontal plane "A" (FIG. 2).

With continuing reference to FIGS. 1 and 2, the handle 15 lever arm 40a is the forward most component of the four bar linkage 14a. The handle lever arm 40a is approximately 4.5 inches in length between the pivot points 44a and 48a includes a handle 16a extending therefrom. In the present embodiment, the follower lever arm 38a is preferably not 20 disposed parallel with respect to primary lever arm 36a. The handle 16a is preferably rigidly connected to the handle lever arm 40a, and preferably includes a first handle portion 16x extending in a first, perpendicular direction therefrom, and a second handle portion 16y curving outwardly from the 25 first portion 16x, preferably at a 90° angle, and preferably slightly downwardly. Such an arrangement enables a slight rotational movement of the bottom end 41a of the handle lever arm 40a in the direction of arrow "y" during operation, resulting in a slight tilt of the handle 16a through the 30 complete range of motion. Such a slight tilt of the handle assists the user in maintaining the proper biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise, as previously described. The handle 16a is preferably rigidly connected to the handle lever arm 35 40a, extends in a first, perpendicular direction therefrom. curves outwardly, preferably at a 90° angle, and preferably slightly downwardly. With such an arrangement, a user may choose either a grip which is perpendicular or substantially parallel to the handle lever arm 40a, also known as hori- 40 zontal or neutral grips, respectively. When a horizontal grip is used, i.e. when the user grasps handle portions 16x so that their hands are substantially perpendicular to the handle lever arm 40a, as shown in FIGS. 7 and 8, then the tilted axes maintain the correct biomechanical alignment of the 45 wrists. When a neutral grip is used, i.e., when the user grasps handle portions 16y so that their hands are substantially parallel to handle lever arm 40a, as shown in FIGS. 9 and 10. the four-bar linkage mechanisms also enable the user to maintain the correct biomechanical alignment of the joints. 50 In either case, the handle does not substantially twist or change orientation relative to the horizontal (A) and vertical (Z and B) planes throughout the user's complete range of motion, i.e., displacement of the four-bar linkage mechanisms. Alternatively, the handle 16a may extend at any 55 orientation with respect to the handle lever arm 40a, provided the orientation allows the user to comfortably grip the handle while preferably properly aligning the user's hands with respect to the user's wrists. In the present embodiment the handle 16a is welded to the handle lever arm 40a, 60 although other attachment methods may be utilized provided that the handle 16a remains substantially stationary with respect to the handle lever arm 40a. The handle 16a is also preferably covered with foam for user comfort.

Referring now to FIG. 17, pulley system 56 preferably 65 includes a cable 58 attached at a first end to primary lever arm 36a and attached at a second end to primary lever arm

10

36b. In the present embodiment, the cable 58 is preferably attached by pivot blocks 17a and 17b to both of the primary lever arms 36a and 36b, respectively. As previously discussed, the cable 58 is attached at approximately 55% of the distance between the first pivot points 46a and 46b to the second pivot points 44a and 44b, respectively, as measured starting from the second pivot points 46a and 46b, in order to increase the mechanical advantage the user has over the weight to be lifted.

In order to effectuate movement of the selected weight by actuation of either, or both four bar linkages, cable 58 is routed from primary lever arm 36a, through a plurality of secondary pulleys 61a, 61b, and 61c, respectively, and through floating pulley 60. From floating pulley 60, the cable 58 is routed through a plurality of secondary pulleys 61d, 61e, and 61f for attachment to primary lever arm 36b. Secondary pulleys 61a through 61f operate to route the cable from attachment to the four linkages to the floating pulley 60 in an unobtrusive manner which is easy to access for replacement or repairs, while not interfering with the exercise motions of the user. It will be understood to those skilled in the art that because pulleys 61a through 61f are utilized to route the cable 58 to the floating pulley 60, any number of pulleys may be utilized in a variety of orientations, as long as routing to the floating pulley is achieved.

Floating pulley 60 preferably consists of a pulley 60a disposed between two side plates 60b and, 60c, is connected to a pivot block 63 at one end thereof, and is movable by cable 58 in the direction indicated by arrow M. In operation, a user will begin from a starting position, as shown in FIG. 9, and push on handles 16a and 16b, either simultaneously. or one at a time, in an outward direction, indicated by arrow "E". If the handles are pushed on simultaneously, as shown in FIG. 10, both primary lever arms 36a and 36b operate to put cable 58 in a state of tension, which in turn puts tension on floating pulley 60. The tension on pulley 60 is sufficient to move the pulley in the direction of arrow M, from an initial, at rest position, to a second, active position. Alternatively, if the user chooses to push on only one handle at a time, for example, handle 16b, then the cable is initially moved in the direction of arrow "D" (FIG. 17), as described

Movement of handle 16b, and hence, cable 58 in the direction indicated by arrow "D" places tension on the cable, and the tension on the cable is initially transferred to primary lever arm 36a. During movement of handle 16b, handle 16a is preferably still grasped by the user. Therefore, the force initially transferred to primary lever arm 36a will not operate to move the lever arm, as the movement will be resisted by the user's grip on handle 16a. Alternatively, if the user does not resist the force from cable 58, the primary lever arm will move in the direction of arrow "F", until such time as roller 37a of stop arm 35a abuts primary lever arm 36a, as described above. In either case, the force exerted on and through cable 58 will ultimately be transferred through floating pulley 60 and will operate to move pulley 60 in the direction of arrow M, as discussed above. The above description is also applicable to movement of handle 16a, with the force being initially transferred to primary lever arm 36b. It will be understood to those skilled in the art that since the pulleys are utilized to route the cable 58 to the floating pulley 60, any number of pulleys may be utilized in a variety of orientations, as long as routing to the floating pulley is achieved.

Floating pulley 60 is attached at one end to cable 30 by pivot block 63. Movement of floating pulley 60 in the direction of arrow M, therefore, also operates to move cable

30 in the direction of arrow M. As shown in FIG. 1, cable 30 is routed through a pulley 68a, and then through pulley 68b, attached to the exterior of weight mechanism 12. Cable 30 is then received within housing 22 of weight mechanism 12, where the cable is preferably routed through pulleys 70a and 70b (FIG. 17). Pulleys 70a and 70b operate to orientate the cable above the plurality of selectable weights 24, disposed within housing 22. Cable 30 exits the housing at an aperture 72 where it is operatively connected to central rod 32, as described above. Again, any number of pulleys may be utilized to route cable 30, as long as the cable is operatively connected to central rod 32.

The operation of chest press machine 10 will now be described with reference to FIGS. 1-17. Prior to performance of an exercise routine, a user will first adjust seat 20 15 to a desired position in which the user's feet will preferably be in contact with floor 17. The user then selects the desired weight for performance of the exercise by inserting pin 34 into the transverse hole of the appropriate weight plate, as described above. Due to the off-center orientation of weight 20 mechanism 12 with respect to seat 20, the user may select the weight from either a seated or a standing position. In either case, after the weight has been selected the user should be seated in seat 20 with the user's back preferably resting against support cushion 27. The direction the user is 25 facing is considered the forward facing direction for purposes of this invention. After the user is properly seated, the user pushes on foot start 15, with his or her foot in order to move the four bar linkages and hence handles 16a and 16b toward the user so that the user can readily grasp either one, 30 or both, handles 16a and 16b. Once the user has grasped the handles 16a and 16b, in either a horizontal or neutral grip. the user is ready to perform a chest press exercise. As stated above, when utilizing a neutral grip (FIG. 13 and 14) the four-bar linkage mechanisms enable the user to maintain the 35 proper biomechanical alignment of the joints. If a horizontal grip (FIG. 9 and 10) is utilized then the tilted axes maintain the proper alignment of the wrists.

The user performs the chest press exercise by first pushing on handles 16a and 16b in an outward direction as indicated by arrow "X" (FIGS. 12). As the user begins pushing in the direction as indicated by arrow "X", the bottom end 41 of handle lever arm 40a begins to rotate slightly in the direction of arrow "Y" which results in a slight tilt of handles 16a and 16b through the range of motion of the exercise, but not as much tilt as the angular deflection of primary arms 36 and 36b. This, slight tilt is enabled by the four-bar linkage mechanisms 14a and 14b in order to maintain proper biomechanical alignment of the user's wrist and forearm during performance of the exercise.

As the user continues to move the handles 16a and 16b in the outward direction, because of the orientation of the primary axes 46a and 46b and the secondary axles 50a and 50b, the four-bar linkage mechanisms 14a and 14b travel in planes which are tilted relative to vertical and are, therefore, 55 non-perpendicular with respect to the plane "A" underlying the machine 10, as described herein above. The tilted planes through which the four bar linkage mechanisms travel enable the handles 16a and 16b to travel in a slightly curvilinear upwardly converging and downwardly diverging 60 path, which is illustrated as "C" in FIG. 11. Such a movement simulates as natural a human musculoskeletal outward pushing motion as possible while maintaining proper biomechanical alignment of the user's joints. As the user is pushing the handles 16a and 16b in the outward direction, 65 cable 58 is placed in a state of tension and floating pulley 60 is moved into the active position, as described above.

Activation of floating pulley 60 operates to move the selected weights vertically, in an upward direction within housing 22. Once the user has fully extended his or her arms as shown in FIG. 10, the user then allows handles 16a and 16b to return the handles to the starting position for the exercise.

The handles 16a and 16b move along the same path of travel, but in the downward direction, until the handles are returned to the starting position. As the user allows the handles to move toward the starting position, the four-bar linkages travel through the tilted planes once again, this time in the inward direction with respect to the user. While the user is allowing handles 16a and 16b, to return to the start position, the selected weights are moving in a vertical, downward direction, within housing 22. Once the user reaches the starting point of the exercise, one repetition has been completed through the range of motion of the user.

It will be understood that various modifications may be made to the embodiment disclosed herein. For example, all lengths and angles given are approximate and may be varied by one of skill in the art, the machine may be utilized with, or without a high-mass, short-travel weight stack, the machine may be utilized with or without a seat, the primary lever arms may be parallel without substantially effecting the biomechanical alignment of the user's joints. Therefore, the above description should not be construed as limiting, but merely as exemplifications of a preferred embodiment. Those skilled in the art will envision other modifications within the scope spirit of the invention.

What is claimed is:

- 1. A chest press exercise apparatus, comprising:
- a base member for supporting the apparatus on a horizontal plane and defining a first vertical plane normal thereto and a second vertical plane orthogonal to the first;
- a support member extending from the base member;
- a pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms supported by the support member, the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever arm pivotable about a secondary axis, the primary axes being disposed at an angle with respect to each other and to the second vertical plane such that the lower end of the primary axes are tilted inwardly toward each other and the second vertical plane,
- the primary and follower lever arms lying in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to the first vertical plane;
- a handle operatively associated with each of the four-bar linkage mechanisms,
- a weight mechanism operatively associated with the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms for resisting movement of the four bar linkage mechanisms; and
- wherein the primary and follower lever arms travel in the common plane as the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position while maintaining a correct biomechanical positioning.
- 2. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 1, further comprising:
  - a handle lever arm operatively associated with both of the primary and follower arms of each of the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms.
  - wherein each handle extends outwardly and perpendicularly from one of the handle lever arms, and curves

outwardly and downwardly therefrom at a 90 degree angle, such that the handles travel in a slightly curvilinear upwardly converging and downwardly diverging path as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position while 5 maintaining a correct biomechanical positioning.

- 3. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 1, wherein the support member further comprises an extension arm and a support arm connected to the extension arm, and the primary and secondary axes are aligned with the support arm such that the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms are pivotally supported by the support member.
- 4. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 3, wherein each four-bar linkage mechanism further comprises a handle lever arm pivotally connected to both the primary lever arm 15 and the follower lever arm.
- 5. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 4, wherein each handle extends from one of the handle lever arms and is adapted to be gripped by the hand of a user.
- 6. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 5, wherein 20 each handle lever arm is pivotally connected to the primary lever arm about a first pivot point and to the follower arm about a second pivot point.
- 7. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 6. wherein the distance between the first pivot point and the second 25 pivot point on each handle lever arm is about 4.5 inches.
- 8. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 5, wherein each handle includes a first handle portion extending in a first perpendicular direction from the handle lever arm, and a second handle portion extending in a second direction from the first handle portion, such that the handles travel in a slightly curvilinear upwardly converging and downwardly diverging path as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position while maintaining a correct biomechanical positioning.
- 9. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 8, wherein the second handle portion extends outwardly and perpendicularly from the first handle portion.
- 10. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 9, wherein the second handle portion curves outwardly and down- 40 wardly from the first handle portion.
- 11. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 1, further comprising a cable portion operatively associated with the weight mechanism for pulling the weight mechanism, attached at an attachment point between the first pivot point 45 and the second pivot point of each primary lever arm.
- 12. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 4, wherein the attachment point is about 55% of the distance between the first pivot point and the second pivot point of the primary lever arms, as measured starting from the second pivot point. 50
- 13. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 12, wherein the distance between the first pivot point and the second pivot point on each primary lever arm is between about 25 to about 35 inches.
- 14. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 13, 55 wherein the distance between the first pivot point and the second pivot point on each primary lever arms is about 30.5 inches.
- 15. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 11, wherein the primary lever arms are spaced apart from the 60 follower lever arms.
- 16. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 1, wherein the primary axes are parallel to and spaced apart from the secondary axes.
- 17. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 16, 65 wherein the primary axes are parallel to the first vertical plane.

- 18. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 17. wherein the primary axes are spaced apart from the secondary axes by a distance of about 3.75 inches.
- 19. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 18. wherein the primary axes of each four-bar linkage are disposed at an angle of between about 135 to about 165 degrees with respect to each other.
- 20. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 19, wherein the primary axes of each four-bar linkage are disposed at an angle of about 150 degrees with respect to each other
- 21. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 1, wherein the support member is disposed at an angle with respect to the first vertical plane.
- 22. The chest press exercise apparatus of claim 21, wherein the support member is disposed at an angle of about 30 degrees with respect to the first vertical plane.
  - 23. A chest press exercise apparatus comprising:
  - a base member for supporting the apparatus on a horizontal plane and defining a first vertical plane normal thereto and a second vertical plane orthogonal to the first:
  - a support member extending from the base member;
  - a first and a second four-bar linkage mechanism, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever arm pivotable about a second axis, the primary axes being disposed at an angle with respect to each other and to the second vertical plane, such that the lower end of the primary axes are tilted inwardly toward each other and the second vertical plane;
  - the primary and follower lever arms being pivotable in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to the second vertical plane;
  - a weight mechanism operatively associated with the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms for resisting movement of the four-bar linkage mechanisms; and
  - the support member comprising at least one post member connected to the base member and extending upwardly behind a seat, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms being supported on the at least one post member above and behind the seat;
  - wherein the primary and follower lever arms travel in the common plane as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second posi-
  - 24. A chest press exercise apparatus comprising:
  - a base member for supporting the apparatus on a horizontal plane and defining a first vertical plane normal thereto and a second vertical plane orthogonal to the first:
  - a support member extending from the base member;
  - a first and a second four-bar linkage mechanism supported by the support member, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever arm pivotable about a second axis, the primary axes being disposed at an angle with respect to each other and to the second vertical plane, such that the lower end of the primary axes are tilted inwardly toward each other and the second vertical plane;
  - the primary and follower lever arms being pivotable in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to the second vertical plane;

- wherein the primary and follower lever arms travel in the common tilted plane as the four-bar linkage mechanism are displaced between a first position and a second position;
- the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each having a length, and each being pivotally supported at a first selected position along the length and each having a handle connected to a second selected position along the length;
- the apparatus including a seat which is adapted to position a user in a disposition relative to the handles such that the handles are manually engageable by the user for pressing the handles between the first position and the second position in a chest press motion.
- 25. A chest press exercise apparatus comprising:
- a base member for supporting the apparatus on a horizontal plane and defining a first vertical plane normal thereto and a second vertical plane orthogonal to the first:
- a support member extending from the base member;
- a first and a second four-bar linkage mechanism supported by the support member, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever 25 arm pivotable about a second axis, the primary axes being disposed at an angle with respect to each other and to the second vertical plane, such that the lower end of the primary axes are tilted inwardly toward each other and the second vertical plane; 30
- the primary and follower lever arms being pivotable in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to the second vertical plane;
- a weight mechanism operatively associated with the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms for resisting movement of the four-bar linkage mechanisms;
- wherein the primary and follower lever arms travel in the common tilted plane as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position;
- a handle lever arm operatively associated with each of the primary and follower lever arms;
- the handle lever arm having a manually engageable handle for moving the four-bar linkage mechanisms 45 between the first and second positions, the handle being disposed in a predetermined gripping orientation in the first position, the operative association of the handle lever arm with the primary and follower arms main-

taining the handle extension in the predetermined gripping orientation during displacement of the four-bar linkage arms between the first and second positions.

- 26. A chest press exercise machine comprising:
- a base member for supporting the apparatus on a horizontal plane and defining a first vertical plane normal thereto and a second vertical plane orthogonal to the first.
- a support member extending from the base member;
- a first and a second four-bar linkage mechanism supported by the support member, the first and second four-bar linkage mechanisms each including a primary lever arm pivotable about a primary axis and a follower lever arm pivotable about a second axis, the primary axes being disposed at an angle with respect to each other and to the second vertical plane, such that the lower end of the primary axes are tilted inwardly toward each other and the second vertical plane;
- the primary and follower lever arms being pivotable in a common plane tilted at an angle relative to a vertical plane:
- a handle operatively associated with each of the primary and follower arms of each of the pair of four-bar linkage mechanisms;
- wherein the primary and follower lever arms travel in the common tilted plane as the four-bar linkage mechanisms are displaced between a first position and a second position;
- wherein at least one of the primary and follower lever arms of each of the four-bar linkage mechanisms is operatively associated with a cable and a selected portion of a selectable weight stack, the selected portion of the weight stack being displaced by a distance upon movement of each four-bar linkage mechanisms from a first position to a second position.
- 27. The apparatus of claim 26, wherein the primary and follower lever arms each have a length, a handle being interconnected to a first position and the cable being interconnected to a second position along the length of at least one of the four-bar linkage mechanisms, the first and the second positions being selected such that the selected portion of the weight stack travels through a distance less than about 60% of the displacement distance of the handle upon displacement of the handle from a first position to a second position.

\* \* \* \* \*



## United States Patent [19]

### **Jones**

Patent Number: [11]

5,273,505

Date of Patent: [45]

Dec. 28, 1993

right 1982, cover, copyright pg., pp. 102 and 103 The					
"Compound Position Biceps Machine".					
Leverage Machines by Nautilus Brochure.					
Nautilus Instruction Manual					

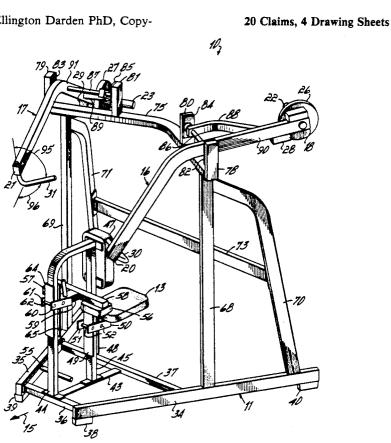
Cybex Brochure.

Leverage Machines by Nautilus, Instruction Manual.

Primary Examiner-Richard J. Apley Assistant Examiner—Jerome Donnelly Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Wood, Herron & Evans

#### ABSTRACT

A high row exercise machine includes a frame symmetrical with respect to a vertical midplane, a seat connected to the frame adapted to support an exerciser along the midplane in a forward facing direction, and a pair of spaced levers pivotally connected to the frame above and behind the seat on opposite sides of the midplane. The levers pivot through vertical planes of motion which converge with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat. Each of the rearward ends of the levers is adapted to hold a selected weight resistance, and each of the forward ends of the levers includes an angled handle located in front of and above the exerciser supported on the seat. An exerciser supported on the seat reaches up and grasps the handles, with palms facing forward, and then pulls downwardly and slightly forwardly in a high row exercise motion to pivot the levers against the selected weight resistances held by the hubs.



[54] HIGH ROW EXERCISE MACHINE

[75] Inventor: Gary A. Jones, Falmouth, Ky.

[73] Assignee: Hammer Strength Corporation,

Cincinnati, Ohio

[\*] Notice: The portion of the term of this patent

subsequent to Sep. 24, 2008 has been

disclaimed.

[21] Appl. No.: 779,947

[22] Filed: Oct. 21, 1991

**U.S. Cl.** ...... 482/97; 482/133; 482/142

482/133, 139, 142; 128/25 R

[56] References Cited

#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,858,873	1/1975	Jones	482/97
			482/139
3,998,455	12/1976	Jones	273/29 BD
4,720,099	1/1988	Carlson	482/133
5,044,631	9/1991	Jones	482/93
5,050,873	9/1991	Jones	482/93

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Cybex (Strength Systems) p. 2 (Lat Pulldown) Dec. 1989.

The Nautilus Book, by Ellington Darden PhD, Copy-

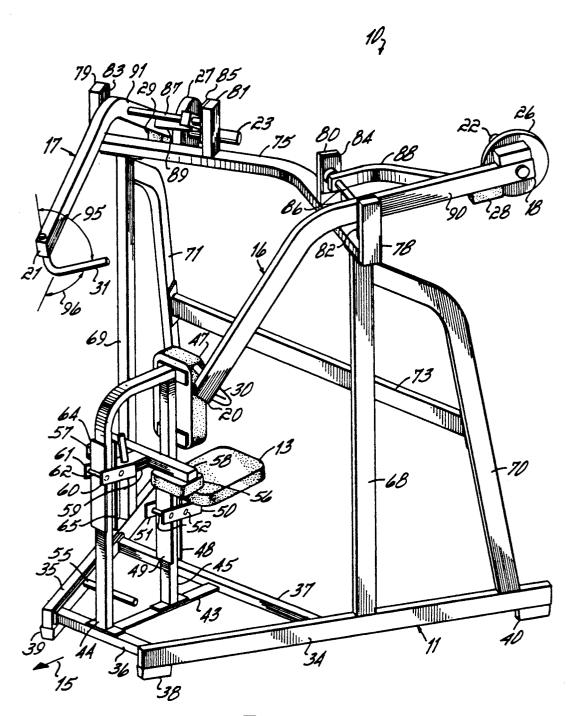
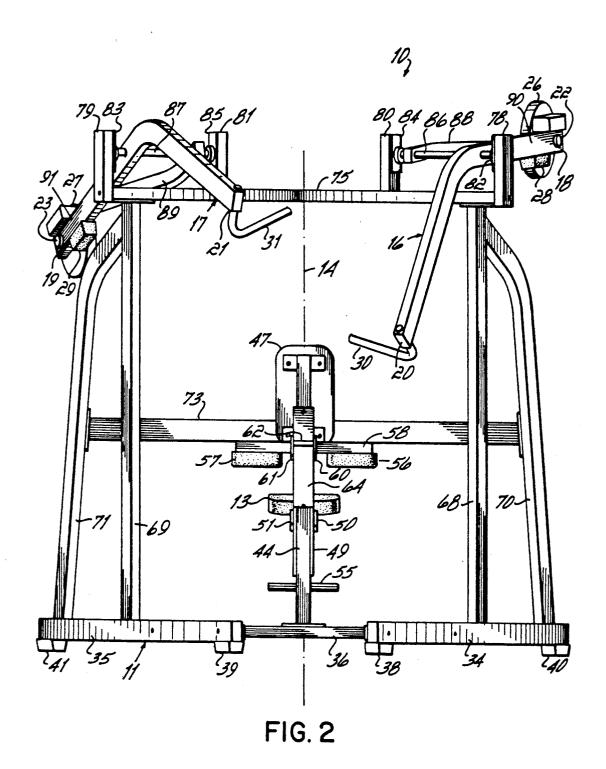
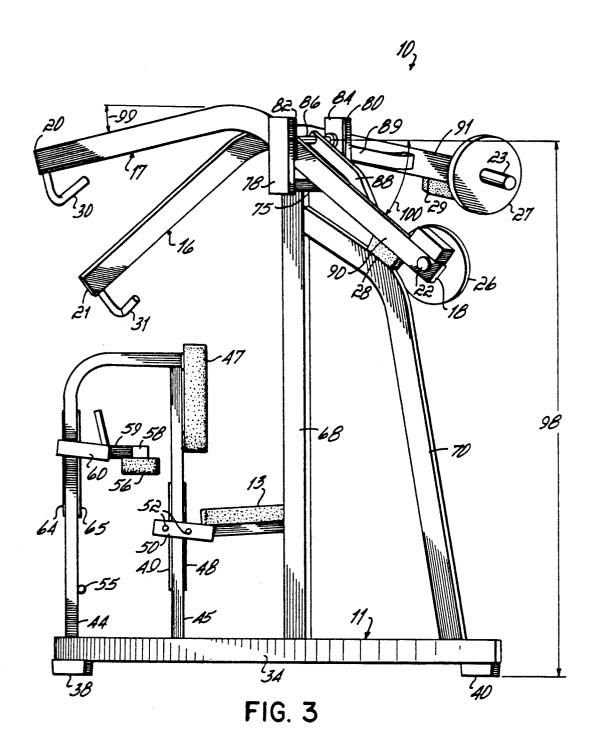
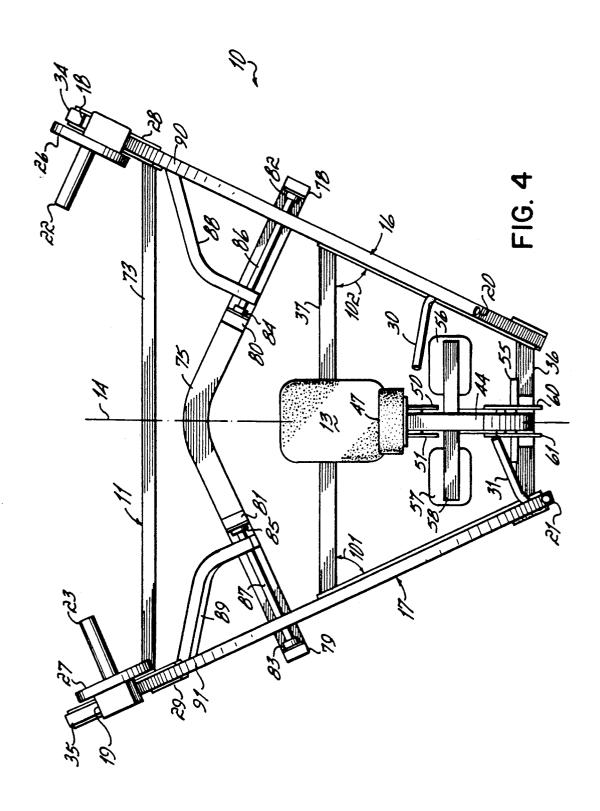


FIG. I







#### HIGH ROW EXERCISE MACHINE

#### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to weight training exercise equipment. More particularly, this invention relates to an exercise machine for exercising a muscle group which includes the latissimus dorsi, the rhomboids, the posterior deltoids and the biceps through a high row motion.

#### **BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

Many athletes and non-athletes utilize weight lifting or weight training exercises to build strength and/or bulk, to prevent injury, or to improve overall condition 15 and appearance. Typically, weight training exercises are performed with either exercise machines or free weights, i.e., barbells and weighted plates, dumbbells, etc. For various reasons, most exercise programs incorporate both machines and free weights in a variety of <sup>20</sup> different exercise routines in order to maximize the effect of working out a desired number of muscle groups.

Free weights offer a number of advantages over exercise machines. For instance, they are relatively inexpen- 25 sive in comparison to exercise machines. Free weights are also more versatile because a variety of exercises can be performed with one set of weights, whereas most exercise machines are designed for only one exercise. Even though some exercise machines accommodate 30 more than one exercise, the cost of these machines usually increases proportionately with the number of exercises. Use of dumbbells also enables both arms to be exercised independently. Finally, free weights are popular among many weight lifters because the lifting move- 35 progress can be monitored. ments are not restricted to prescribed planes of motion or prescribed angles.

Nevertheless, there are also a number of inherent disadvantages associated with free weights. One such disadvantage relates to safety. Although most weight 40 room instructors strongly advise against an individual working out by himself or herself, this cautionary measure is particularly important when the lifting of free weights is involved. This is due to commonly recognized dangers such as the possibility of dropping a 45 weight on a body part, or becoming trapped beneath a bar, which could easily occur in exercises such as bench press, incline press or squat. Additionally, through carelessness, loading and unloading of heavy weighted plates onto the ends of a bar sometimes results in an 50 unbalanced bar that falls downward from its rack.

Another disadvantage associated with some free weight exercises relates to the body positioning required to perform a prescribed maneuver. The location of the weights with respect to the body may be awk- 55 ward and/or dangerous. Finally, due to gravity, for some movements designed to exercise a muscle group in a particular way, a weight resistance simply cannot be applied against the muscular movement without a machine. Generally, any exercise which requires some 60 that the high row exercise motion is relatively unimpordownward pulling movement would come under this latter category. One particular pulling exercise movement is referred to as a high row. This movement exercises a muscle group which includes the latissimus dorsi, the rhomboids, the posterior deltoids and the biceps. 65 Starting with arms extended above and in front of the head, with palms pronated, or facing outwardly, the exerciser pulls downwardly and slightly forwardly to a

2

position in front of the chest against a weight resistance applied throughout the motion. The motion is downward and slightly forward, while the applied resistance against this muscle group during the high row motion is directed upwardly and slightly rearwardly. The elbows move outwardly during the pulling motion.

One exercise maneuver which exercises this muscle group through this motion is a relatively close grip pull up performed with palms facing forward and, in an uppermost position, with the head of the exerciser pulled up and facing the bar. During this motion, the weight resistance of the body applies downward force, but there is also some rearward resistance felt by the exerciser, because the torso moves rearwardly as the body is pulled upwardly. With arms extended, the bar is directly above the head. When the body is pulled up, the bar is in front of the head. This movement also requires some outward movement of the elbows during pulling.

While a pull up performed this way may effectively exercise the above-described muscle group, it has a number of limitations. First, many people simply cannot lift their own weight, and this manner of pull up requires that the exerciser be able to lift at least his or her weight. Second, a pull up cannot be easily performed with one hand. One important aspect of weight training involves the isolation of muscle groups on both sides of an exerciser's body, so that the arms or the legs can be exercised independently, or simultaneously, depending on the circumstances. Particularly during rehabilitation, single limb exercise enables an exerciser to measure and compare the relative strength of an injured limb to the strength of the healthy limb, so that rehabilitation

Some exercise machines provide a pulley/cable exercise device which includes a pulley restricted bar held at opposite ends and pulled downwardly. This device is commonly referred to as a lat pulldown. A lat pulldown may be used to perform several different pulldown exercises, including a modified high row. This is done by connecting a narrow hand grip to the bar, grasping the grip with palms forward, leaning back and pulling downwardly from above the head to a position in front of the head, from either a seated or a kneeling position. Unfortunately, this manner of performing a high row exercise suffers from a number of deficiencies.

First, the resistance is directed upwardly, or vertical, with no transverse resistance felt by the exerciser. While an exerciser using this device may lean the torso rearward during the pulldown motion, this compound pulling/leaning movement does not apply any transverse resistance to the desired muscle group. In other words, this particular device does not track the natural position of the muscles through the high row motion previously described. Moreover, this machine can only be operated one arm at a time.

Perhaps due to costs, or due to a mistaken perception tant, applicant is unaware of any exercise machine which exercises the high row muscle group in a sufficient manner.

It is an object of the invention to provide an exercise machine which maximizes the muscular benefit attainable during performance of a high row motion by applying resistance against the natural body motion throughout this movement.

It is another object of this invention to provide a high row exercise machine which is particularly suitable for exercising one arm at a time.

It is another object of the invention to provide a high row exercise machine which combines the advanta- 5 geous features of both free weight exercise and exercise machines without incorporating the attendant disadvantages normally associated therewith.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention contemplates a high row exercise machine which includes a frame, a seat connected to the frame to support an exerciser facing a forward direction and a pair of spaced levers pivotally connected to opposite sides of the frame above and behind the seat. Rear- 15 ward ends of the levers provide selectable weight resistances for exercising against. The forward ends of the levers include inwardly angled handles adapted to be grasped above the head of the seated exerciser, with the palms directed forwardly and the thumbs pointed in- 20 wardly. With the handles grasped, the levers may be pulled downwardly and slightly forwardly to a position in front of the chest in a high row motion, thereby to pivotally raise the respective weighted rearward ends and move the levers through vertical planes which 25 converge with respect to the forward direction.

Because it has two independently pivotal levers, this high row exercise machine enables the performance of either simultaneous or alternate exercise of both arms. This feature is particularly advantageous in monitoring 30 rehabilitation progress after an injury, where it is often necessary to compare the relative strengths of the arms.

In a related aspect of this feature, the levers are substantially balanced, with the weight of the rearward ends being only slightly greater than the forward ends. 35 position of an exerciser during this motion. As a result, As a result, for each lever, the total moment about the pivot axis is very low, and the minimum weight that must be exercised against, i.e., with no weight plates supported, is very low. Therefore, and also because the pivotal lever has substantially no friction, the weights 40 supported on the rearward ends of the levers closely approximate the actual weight resistance that is exercised against. This feature becomes important during the initial stages of rehabilitation, when it may be required to exercise against very low weight resistance 45 and keep highly accurate records of actual weight lifted. In short, this machine facilitates the monitoring and measuring of rehabilitation progress through very low weight resistances.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the 50 invention, a high row exercise machine includes a frame that is symmetric about a vertical midplane, a seat connected to the frame and adapted to support an exerciser facing a forward direction along the vertical midplane, and a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame 55 above and behind the seat. Forward ends of the levers extend in front of the seat and include angled handles which are adapted to be grasped and pulled downwardly and slightly forwardly to pivot the levers through planes of motion which converge forwardly 60 toward the vertical midplane. When in an at rest position, the rearward ends of the levers rest against the frame, angled downwardly from horizontal. Each rearward end includes an inwardly directed hub adapted to hold at least one removable weight to enable an exer- 65 exercising. ciser to provide a desired weight resistance for the levers. Each rearward end also includes a stop which rests against the frame when in an at rest position. The

initial angle of the at rest position determines the magnitude of the applied resistance felt by the exerciser during initiation and throughout the exercise motion. The angled handles are located above and in front of the head of the exerciser when the levers are in the at rest position. A pair of pads located in front of the seat engages the upper thighs of an exerciser supported on the seat. The pads prevent upward movement of the exerciser during the pulldown motion. Like the seat, the pads are vertically adjustable with respect to the frame to accommodate exercisers of different size.

This high row exercise machine facilitates safe and efficient performance of a high row motion to exercise a muscle group which includes the latissimus dorsi, the rhomboids, the posterior deltoids and the biceps. More importantly, the structural orientation of the frame, including the converging vertical planes of motion through which the levers move, the locations of the pivot points with respect to the seat, the locations of the handles above and in front of the exerciser and the angles of the handles with respect to the exerciser's body all combine to accommodate the natural musculoskeletal make-up of the human body. Thus, this machine enables an exerciser to couple the exertable force against a selected weight resistance in a manner which, compared to a pull up or a modified pulldown exercise performed with a pulley/chain pull-down device, feels more compatible with the natural angles through which the body normally moves during a high row motion.

The use of levers provides a weight resistance which is directed upwardly and slightly rearwardly during the motion. The converging planes of the levers and the handle angles better accommodate the natural muscular maximum muscular benefits for this muscle group during this motion are achieved with this machine. At the same time, only a minimum amount of joint stress is felt by the joints associated with this muscle group.

The structural orientation of this high row exercise machine evolved from applicant's belief that most exercise machines oversimplify the musculoskeletal movements of the human body. While his accumulated years of observing and analyzing athletic movements of the body led him to conclude that most musculoskeletal movements are rather complex and involve multiple joints and multiple degrees of freedom, he also recognized that most exercise machines require bodily movement in directions or planes that are oriented simply at right angles or parallel to the torso of the body.

Based on these observations, and bolstered by his opinion that the ultimate objective of any exercise machine is to provide maximum muscular benefit with minimum joint stress, applicant perceived a need for improvement in the design of exercise machines and began working toward that goal. Feedback from athletes who have used this inventive high row exercise machine has confirmed that it constitutes a marked improvement over other methods for performing a high row exercise.

This high row exercise machine provides the benefits of both free weight exercise and exercise with weight machines, without incorporating the attendant disadvantages commonly associated with these methods of

These and other features of the invention will be more readily understood in view of the following detailed description and the drawings in which:

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS** 

FIG. 1 is a perspective view of a high row exercise machine in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 2 is a front view, looking forward, of the high row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1.

FIG. 3 is a side view of the high row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1, depicting one of the lever arms in an at rest position.

FIG. 4 is a plan view of the high row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1.

#### **DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

FIGS. 1-4 show a high row exercise machine 10 in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention. This machine 10 includes a frame 11 made of a number of straight and/or curved sections of heavy duty steel that are either welded or bolted together, or 20 pivotally connected. A seat 13 is connected to the frame 11 along a vertical midplane 14 and adapted to support an exerciser in a forward facing direction indicated by directional arrow 15. Levers designated generally by numerals 16 and 17 ar pivotally connected to the frame 25 11 above and behind the seat 13. The frame 11 is symmetric with respect to the midplane 14, and the levers 16 and 17 are located on opposite sides of the midplane 14. In describing the details of the machine 10, with respect to forward direction 15, components which are 30 symmetrical with respect to midplane 14 have been numbered so that the even numbered component resides to the left of the midplane 14 and the next higher odd number designates the corresponding symmetric component residing on the right side of the midplane 14. 35

Each lever has a rearward end and a forward end. Lever 16 includes rearward end 18 and forward end 20. Lever 17 includes rearward end 19 and forward end 21. Each rearward end is equipped with a hub adapted to hold at least one removable weight and a rubber stop 40 adapted to coact with the frame 11 to limit downward pivotal movement of the lever with respect to the frame 11. As shown in FIG. 1, rearward end 18 of lever 16 includes hub 22 for supporting at least one removable weight 26 and stop 28 to coact with frame 11. Forward 45 end 20 of lever 16 includes a handle 30 adapted to be grasped and pulled downwardly by an exerciser supported on the seat 13. Similarly, rearward end 19 of the lever 17 includes hub 23 for supporting at least one 21 of lever 17 includes handle 31.

The frame 11 is supported at the bottom by bottom supports 34 and 35 which ar interconnected by front brace 36 and intermediate brace 37. Preferably, front brace 36 and intermediate brace 37 are interconnected 55 to bottom supports 34 and 35 by welded end plates with through holes formed therein for bolted securement to bottom support 34 and 35. Alternately, the end plates could be welded, or the braces could be welded directly to the supports. Bottom support 34 rests on base plates 60 38 and 40 on the left, and bottom support 35 rests on base plates 39 and 41 on the right. The base plates may be rubber or metal. If metal, the base plates may have holes formed therethrough for securement of the machine 10 to a portable base, or to facilitate safe transport 65 of the machine 10.

A bottom connector 43 extends between front brace 36 and intermediate brace 37. First upright 44 and sec6

ond upright 45 extend vertically upwardly from front brace 36 and bottom connector 43, respectively. The uprights are supported at their bottom ends by endwelded plates. Near the top, first upright 44 bends rearwardly to connect to the top of second upright 45. Second upright 45 has a chest support 47 mounted thereon for supporting the chest of an exerciser (not shown) during performance of a high row exercise. Two resilient planar pieces 48 and 49 are mounted to 10 rearward and forward surfaces, respectively, of second upright 45. Spaced parallel supports 50 and 51 extend forwardly from under seat 13 and are interconnected by a pair of horizontal spaced rods 52 which fit snugly on opposite sides of the planar pieces 48 and 49.

To raise or lower the seat 13 with respect to upright 45, the forward end of the seat 13 is tilted upwardly with respect to upright 45 so that the spaced parallel bars move away from, or provide clearance from pieces 48 and 49. In this orientation, the seat 13 may be moved upwardly or downwardly along the planar pieces 48 and 49, in a direction parallel to second upright 45. When the forward end is subsequently tilted downwardly, the parallel bars 52 of the seat 13 will frictionally engage the planar pieces 48 and 49 to hold the seat 13 in place. Any number of other methods for providing vertical adjustability for the seat 13 would also be suitable. If desired, the seat 13 could be mounted separately on a post telescoped within a base, with a bolt and pin connection to provide vertical adjustability for the post.

Similarly, the structural components supported on first upright 44 and designated generally by numeral 55 prevent upward movement of an exerciser supported on the seat 13 during a high row exercise. More particularly, pads 56 and 57 are mounted to a cross bar 58 and located in a position in front of the seat 13 to engage the tops of the thighs of an exerciser supported on the seat 13. Cross bar 58 is welded to a middle brace 59 to which vertically oriented, parallel spaced plates 60 and 61 are connected. Horizontal, parallel rods 62 interconnect the forward ends of spaced plates 60 and 61 to engage the forwardly and rearwardly directed surfaces of resilient planar pieces 64 and 65, respectively, which are mounted to the forward and rearward surfaces of first upright 44, respectively. The vertical position of the pads 55 and 57 may be raised or lowered with respect to first upright 44 by manipulating the cross bar 58 and the parallel rods 62, similar to the manner described above for vertically adjusting seat 13 along second upright 45.

On the left side of the midplane 14, front leg 68 and removable weight 27 thereon and stop 29. Forward end 50 rear leg 70 extend upwardly from bottom support 34. On the right side of the frame 11, front leg 69 and rear leg 71 extend upwardly from bottom support 35. Rear legs 70 and 71 include an intermediate bend adjacent the top ends thereof, prior to connection to rearwardly directed surfaces of front legs 68 and 69, respectively. Rear brace 73 interconnects the rear legs 70 and 71, and top brace 75 extends across the frame 11 between the tops of front legs 68 and 69. Top brace 75 extends slightly beyond each of the front legs 68 and 69. Top brace 75 also supports the work boxes, or the structural components which mount the levers 16 and 17. The top brace 75 includes a centrally located forward bend to accommodate the forward convergence of the sides of the frame 11 and the corresponding forward convergence of the vertical planes through which levers 16 and 17 move.

> For each of the levers, the work box includes spaced uprights mounted to and extending upwardly from top

brace 75. Uprights 78 and 80 are located on the left side of the midplane 14, while uprights 79 and 81 are located on the right side of midplane 15. Bearings 82 and 84 are mounted to the inward and outward directed surfaces of uprights 78 and 80, respectively. Similarly, bearings 5 83 and 85 are mounted to the inwardly and outwardly directed surfaces of uprights 79 and 81, respectively. Axle 86 is connected between bearings 82 and 84, and axle 87 is connected between bearings 83 and 85. The axles pivot within the bearings to provide pivotal mo- 10 tion for the levers 16, 17. While any one of a number of different bearings would work, applicant has found that a pillow block bearing sold by Browning, and identified as Part No. VF 2S 116, has proved suitable. These bearings require maintenance only once a year, maintenance 15 which consists of one shot of lubricating oil. Lever 16 includes a reinforcing arm 88 rigidly connected between axle 86 and lever body 90. Similarly, lever 17 includes a reinforcing arm 89 rigidly connected between axle 87 and lever body 91.

FIGS. 1 and 2 show the orientation of the handles 30 and 31 with respect to the forward ends 20 and 21, respectively. Each of the handles 30 and 31 is actually a bent metal rod which has been bent to form a first portion which is connected to the forward end of the re- 25 spective lever body, and a second portion which is grasped by an exerciser supported on the seat 13. The two portions of each handle are separated by an angle of about 112°, an angle designated by numeral 95 in FIGS. 1 and 2. In another manner of reference, the handle 30 portions are bent inwardly about 68° from a 180° straight line. Preferably, the first portions of the handles are received within holes machined in the forward ends of the levers and then welded in place therein. The second portions of the handles are oriented at angles 35 rotated about 84° from the rearward direction of the respective lever body, an angle designated by numeral

As shown in FIG. 3, numeral 98 designates the vertical distance from the floor to the axle 86, and this dis-40 tance is preferably about 70". Each lever body has a total length of about  $60 \frac{3}{4}$ ". The pivot point of each lever body is located about 27" in front of the rearward end thereof. The distance from the forward end to the center of the bend in the lever body is about 31 5". Due 45 to the weight of the reinforcing arm, the hub and the stops, the rearward end of each lever weighs slightly more than the forward end so that, when at rest, in an initial at rest position, a rearward section the lever body 90 is angled about 40.5° downwardly from horizontal 50 (i.e., 49.5 up from vertical), an angle designated by numeral 100. This locates the forward section of the respective lever body at an angle of about 9.5° downward from horizontal (i.e., 80.5 up from vertical), an angle designated by numeral 99. Combined, in an at rest 55 position, this provides a lever body bend angle between the forward and rearward sections of about 130° (i.e.,  $49.5^{\circ} + 80.5^{\circ}$ ).

In operation, an exerciser seated on seat 13, facing direction 15 and with chest pressed against chest sup-60 port 47, reaches upwardly above the head to grasp handles 30 and 31 of levers 16 and 17, respectively, with palms facing forward. The application of a downward and sightly forward pulling force pivots the levers 16 and 17 with respect to the frame 11 and against the 65 weight resistances held by rearward ends 18 and 19, respectively. Through this motion, the elbows move slightly outwardly. The location of the pivot point, the

bend in the lever body and the respective lengths of the forward and rearward sections of the levers provide a pivotal lever which is, initially, relatively easy to pivot. Pivotal pulling increases in difficulty throughout the pulling motion.

As shown best in FIG. 4 with respect to forward direction 15, the sides of the frame 11 converge toward vertical midplane 14. This forward convergence is designated by numeral 101 on the left and by numeral 102 on the right, and this angle of forward convergence is preferably about 25°. These angles correspond to the forward convergence of the vertical planes through which the levers move.

As mentioned previously, frame 11 enables a person to perform a high row exercise, either simultaneously with both arms or independently, a feature which is particularly desirable for rehabilitation.

While a preferred embodiment of the invention has been described, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited thereby and that in light of the present disclosure various other alternative embodiments will be apparent to a person skilled in the art. For instance, the structural orientation of some parts or portions of the frame 11 is not critical, so long as the position of the lever pivot axes, the lever lengths, the handles, and the converging vertical planes through which the levers rotate are maintained. Additionally, while the particular angles of the sides of the frame 11 and the handle angles shown are considered to be optimum at the present time, based upon feedback from those involved in strength training, it is entirely possible that some further refinements may evolve. Accordingly, it is to be understood that some modification may be made without departing from the scope of the invention as particularly set forth and claimed.

In the claims:

- 1. A high row exercise machine comprising:
- a frame;
- a seat supported within the frame along a vertical midplane and adapted to support an exerciser in seated position facing a forward direction; and
- a lever pivotally connected to the frame above and behind the seat, the lever having a rearward end adapted to hold a selectable weight resistance means and a forward end extending forwardly in front of the seat and adapted to be grasped and pulled downwardly against the force of a selected weight resistance means in a high row motion by an exerciser while supported on the seat, with the palm of the exerciser facing in the forward direction and the thumb directed toward the vertical midplane, thereby to pivotally move the lever along and through a vertical plane which converges with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat.
- 2. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 wherein the lever plane converges with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat at an angle of about 25°.
- 3. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 and further comprising:
  - a handle connected to the forward end of the lever, the handle extending inwardly from the forward end at an angle that is non-perpendicular with respect to the converging lever plane of motion.
- 4. The high row exercise machine of claim 3 wherein, in an at rest position, the handle extends inwardly and upwardly with respect to the forward end of the lever.

- 5. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 and further comprising:
  - a chest support for supporting the chest of an exerciser seated on the seat and facing the forward
- 6. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 and further comprising:

means for adjusting the vertical position of the seat with respect to the frame.

- 7. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 and 10 further comprising: further comprising:
  - means for restricting upward movement of the seated exerciser during pivotal movement of the lever.
- 8. The high row exercise machine of claim 7 wherein said restricting means further comprises:
  - a pair of spaced, downwardly directed pads located on opposite sides of the vertical midplane, the pads adapted to engage against portions of the upper thighs of an exerciser supported on the seat and facing a forward direction.
- 9. The high row exercise machine of claim 8 and further comprising:

means for vertically adjusting the position of the spaced pads with respect to the frame.

further comprising:

another lever pivotally connected to the frame on an opposite side of the vertical midplane, the levers being symmetrical to each other with respect to the exercise of both sides of an exerciser's body through a high row motion using both arms and alternate high row exercise using only one arm at a

- 11. A high row exercise machine comprising:
- a frame symmetrical with respect to a vertical mid-
- a seat supported by the frame along the vertical midplane and adapted to support an exerciser in a forward facing direction; and
- a pair of spaced levers pivotally connected to the frame on opposite sides of the vertical midplane above and behind the seat, each lever having a rearward end adapted to hold a selectable weight resistance and a forward end adapted to be grasped 45 and pulled downwardly against a selected weight resistance through a high row motion by an exerciser while supported on the seat, with the palms of the exerciser facing in the forward direction and the thumbs directed toward the vertical midplane, 50 the levers adapted to pivot through vertical planes of motion which converge with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat.
- 12. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 wherein each lever further comprises:
  - a hub located at a respective rearward end, the hub adapted to hold at least one removable weight.
- 13. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 and further comprising:

a pair of handles, each handle located at a forward end of a respective lever, each handle angled inwardly from the respective converging lever plane of motion and at an angle non-perpendicular

14. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 wherein each lever pivots through a vertical plane which converges forwardly at an angle of about 25.

15. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 and

- a chest support mounted in vertical orientation in front of the seat; and
- means for vertically adjusting the position of the seat with respect to the chest support.
- 16. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 further comprising:
  - means for restricting upward movement of an exerciser supported on the seat during high row pulldown of the levers.
- 17. The high row exercise machine of claim 16 and further comprising:

means for vertically adjusting the position of the restricting means with respect to the frame.

- 18. The high row exercise machine of claim 11 10. The high row exercise machine of claim 1 and 25 wherein each lever includes a forward and a rearward section and an intermediate bend located therebetween and forward of the respective pivot axis, whereby, in an initial at rest position, each rearward section is angled downwardly from horizontal at an angle of about 40.5° vertical midplane, thereby to provide simultaneous 30 and each forward section is angled downwardly at an angle of about 9.5° from horizontal.
  - 19. The high row exercise machine of claim 18 and further comprising:
    - a pair of stops, each of the stops mounted proximate the rearward end of a respective lever and adapted to coact with the frame to limit downward pivotal movement of the respective rearward end.
    - 20. A high row exercise machine comprising:
    - a frame symmetrical about a vertical midplane;
    - exerciser support means positioned proximate a center of the frame to locate an exerciser along the midplane in a forward facing direction;
    - a pair of space high row exercise means located on opposite sides of the midplane, each high row exercise means including a forward end handle adapted to be grasped and pulled downwardly and slightly forwardly in a high row motion against a selected weight resistance by an exerciser while engaging the exercise support means, with the palms of the exerciser facing in the forward direction and the thumbs directed toward the vertical midplane, thereby to pivot each respective high row exercise means about a pivot axis located above and behind the seat, each high row exercise means adapted to be pivoted against the respective selected weight resistance through a vertical plane of motion which converges with respect to the forward facing direction.

60

35

# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. :

5,273,505

DATED

December 28, 1993

INVENTOR(S):

Gary A. Jones

It is certified that error appears in the above-indentified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 5, Line 25, "ar" should read

--are--.

Column 5, Line 53, "ar" should read --are--.

Column 7, Line 54, "80.5" should read --80.5°--.

Column 10, Line 8, "25" should read --25°--.

Column 10, Line 43, "space" should read

--spaced--.

Signed and Sealed this

Thirty-first Day of October 1995

Buce Tehran

Attest:

BRUCE LEHMAN

Attesting Officer

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks



#### US005135456A

## United States Patent [19]

Jones

[11] Patent Number: 5,135,456

[45] Date of Patent:

Aug. 4, 1992

[54] LOW ROW EXERCISE MACHINE					
[75]	Inventor:	Gary A. Jones, Falmouth, Ky.			
[73]	Assignee:	Hammer Strength Corporaation, Cincinnati, Ohio			
[21]	Appl. No.:	691,507			
[22]	Filed:	Apr. 25, 1991			
[58]	Field of Sea	arch 272/118, 130, 134, 136, 272/118, 117, 116, 141, 400; 482/73			
[56] References Cited					
U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
4,898,381 11/1991 Gordon 272/117					
OTHER PUBLICATIONS					

Nautilus Instruction Manual 272/93 Catalog Digest Jun. 14 1979.

Leverage Machines by Nautilus Instruction Manual.

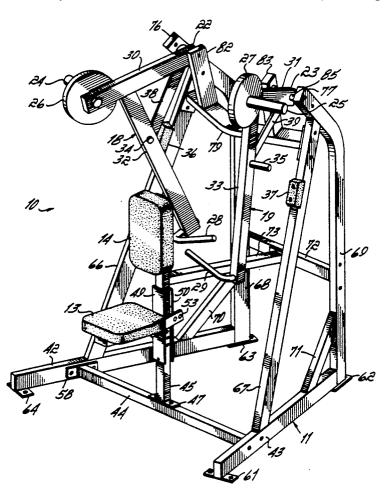
Primary Examiner—Richard J. Apley Assistant Examiner—J. Donnelly

Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Wood, Herron & Evans

#### [57] ABSTRACT

A low row exercise machine includes a frame, a seat and chest support connected to the frame along a vertical midplane, and a paiar of levers with first ends pivotally connected to the frame above and in front of an exerciser supported on the seat. Each lever includes an intermediately located hub for holding a selectable weight resitance and a handle located at a second, lower end thereof adapted to be grasped and pulled rearwardly through a low row exercise motion by an exerciser supported on the seat. The levers pivot through planes which converge with respect to the forward facing direction of the exerciser. The orientation of the frame, the seat and the levers, and particularly the convergence of the levers and the angles of connection of the handles with respect to the levers readily accommodate the natural musculoskeletal makeup of the human body during the performance of a low row exercise motion, thus maximizing the muscular benefit attainable through performance of this exercise motion.

#### 20 Claims, 4 Drawing Sheets



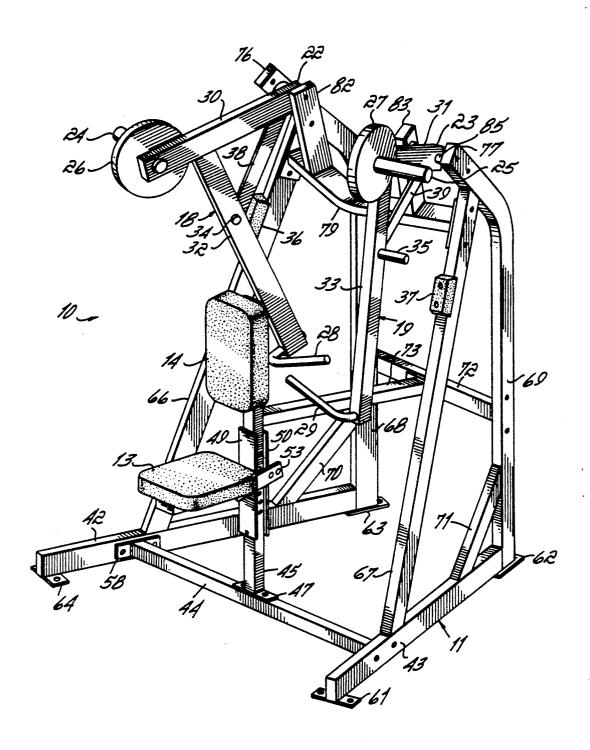
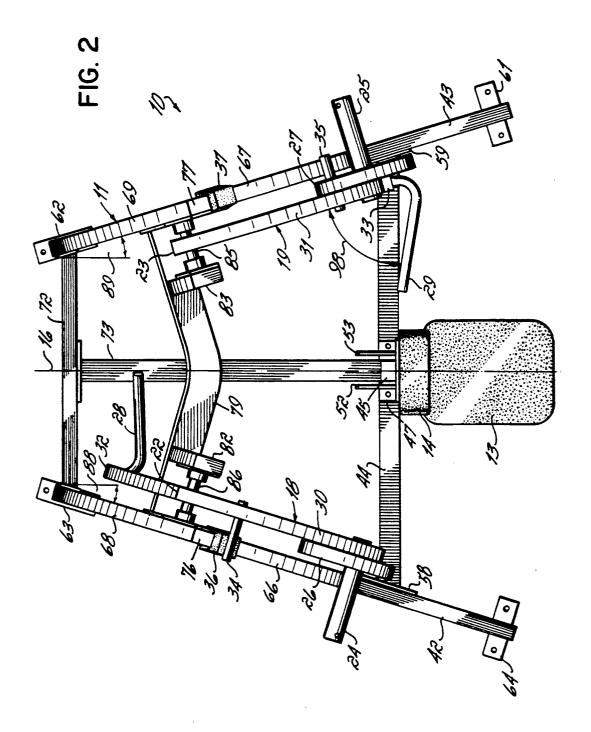


FIG. I



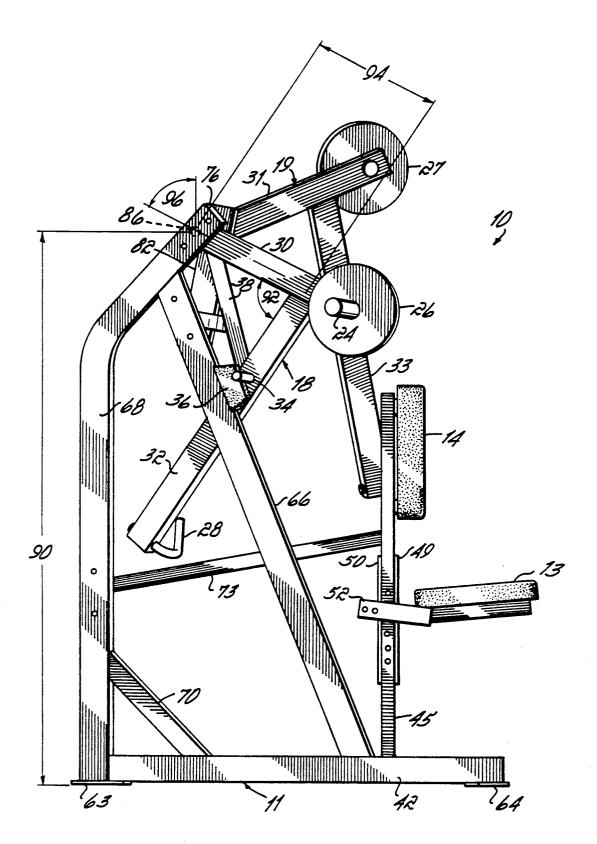


FIG. 3

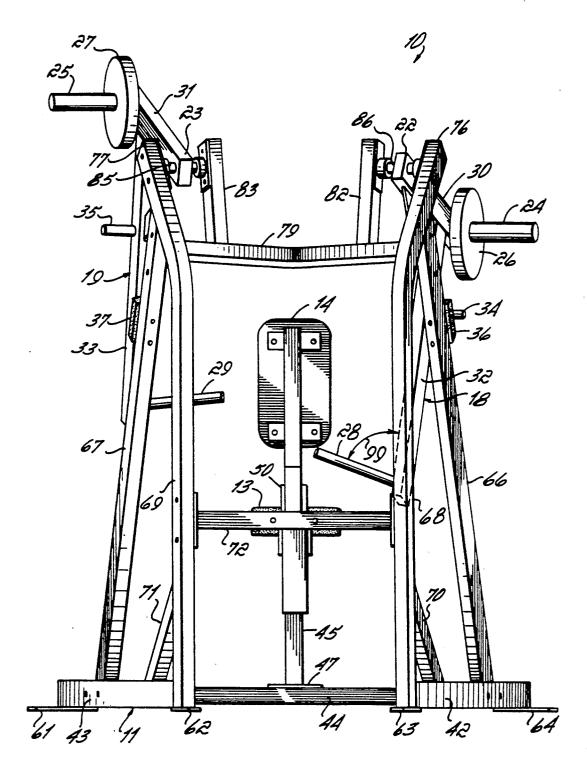


FIG.4

1 LOW ROW EXERCISE MACHINE

#### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to a low row exercise machine for exercising a muscle group that includes the latissimus dorsi, the rhomboids, the posterior deltoid, the trapezius and the biceps.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Many athletes and non-athletes utilize weight lifting or weight training exercises to build strength and/or bulk, to prevent injury, or to improve overall condition and appearance. Typically, weight training exercises are performed with either exercise machines or free weights, i.e., barbells and weighted plates, dumbbells, etc. For various reasons, most exercise programs incorporate both machines and free weights in a variety of different exercise routines in order to maximize the 20 effect of working out a desired number of muscle groups.

Free weights offer a number of advantages over exercise machines. For instance, they are relatively inexpensive in comparison to exercise machines. Free weights 25 are also more versatile because a variety of exercises can be performed with one set of weights, whereas most exercise machines are designed for only one exercise. Even though some exercise machines accommodate more than one exercise, the cost of these machines usually increases proportionately with the number of exercises. Use of dumbbells also enables both arms to be exercised independently. Finally, free weights are popular among many weight lifters because the lifting moveor prescribed angles.

Nevertheless, there are also a number of inherent disadvantages associated with free weights. One such disadvantage relates to safety. Although most weight room instructors strongly advise against an individual 40 performing weight training exercises alone, this cautionary measure is particularly important when the lifting of free weights is involved. This is due to commonly recognized dangers such as the possibility of dropping a weight on a body part, or becoming trapped 45 forward facing direction of the seat. beneath a bar, which could easily occur in exercises such as bench press, incline press or squat. Additionally, through carelessness, loading and unloading of heavy weighted plates onto the ends of a bar sometimes results

Another danger associated with some free weight exercises relates to the body positioning required to perform a prescribed maneuver. For instance, the most efficient way to perform an exercise referred to as a low row exercise is with a weighted barbell or dumbbells 55 held in the hands, in front of the body, with the back bent and arms extended downwardly. The barbell is pulled upwardly toward the chest. This free weight, low row exercise is beneficial from a purely muscular viewpoint. However, it is also dangerous and/or awk- 60 ward because of the position of the body with respect to the barbell during the exercise maneuver. The required bending of the back places the lower back muscles and the spine in a particularly vulnerable position during

It might be said that the potential for injury from performing a low row exercise with free weights far outweighs the attainable muscular benefits. For this

reason, many individuals simply do not perform this exercise.

Another disadvantage associated with this exercise relates to the fact that the weight resistance, or opposing force that is exercised against, is always directed vertically downward by gravity. This limits the manner in which the weight resistance may be applied to the low row muscle group during the prescribed muscular movement. The resistance acted against throughout the 10 motion does not correlate in any way to the strength curve for the low row muscle group.

While the benefit of performing a free weight low row exercise may be questionable, it also seems that the relatively high cost of exercise machines has effectively diminished the incentive to design and develop an exercise machine dedicated solely to exercising the low row muscle group in an effective, injury-free manner. As a result, although many exercise machines do provide some tangential muscular benefit for the low row muscle group, none are designed specifically for the purpose of optimally isolating the low row muscle group to maximize muscular benefit.

It is an object of this invention to provide a low row exercise machine which simulates exercise with free weights but without the disadvantages normally associated therewith.

It is another object of this invention to provide an exercise machine which optimally isolates the low row muscle group to maximize muscular benefit during performance of a low row movement.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention contemplates a low row exercise maments are not restricted to prescribed planes of motion 35 chine with a frame, a seat and chest support connected to the frame along a vertical midplane and a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame in front of the seat. Each lever has an upper end pivotally connected to the frame above and in front of the seat, an intermediate hub for holding a preselected weight resistance and a handle at a lower end adapted to be grasped and pulled rearwardly in a low row exercise motion by an exerciser supported on the seat. The levers pivot through planes which converge with respect to the

Movement of the levers through a low row, arcuate and upward exercise motion exercises a muscle group which includes the latissimus dorsi, the rhomboids, the posterior deltoid, the trapezius and the biceps. This low in an unbalanced bar that falls downward from a rack. 50 row exercise machine provides maximum muscular benefit for this muscle group in a manner which is safe and efficient. Moreover, this low row exercise machine simulates a free weight exercise because the levers move through forwardly converging planes which accommodate the natural musculoskeletal makeup of the human body.

More particularly, the natural musculoskeletal makeup of the body is accommodated by the structural orientation of the levers, the lever axes of pivotal movement and the handles connected to the levers. The particular combination of all of these structural aspects results in a machine which, based upon feedback from a number of individuals involved in the field of strength training, more naturally couples the muscular exertion performance of this exercise in the described manner. 65 of the low row exercise motion against a preselected weight resistance and in a direction of motion that is compatible with the musculoskeletal structural makeup of the body.

Because it has two independently pivotal levers, this low row exercise machine enables the performance of either simultaneous or alternate exercise of both arms. This feature is particularly advantageous in monitoring rehabilitation progress after an injury, where it is often 5 necessary to compare the relative strengths of the arms.

In a related aspect of this feature, the angle of connection of the sections of the lever and the location of the weight supporting hub are substantially counterbalanced. As a result, for each lever, the total moment arm 10 about the lever pivot axis is close to zero when no weights are on the hub. The minimum weight that must be exercised against, i.e., with no weight plates supported, is very low. Therefore, and also because the bearings that support the pivotal levers have substan- 15 tially no friction, weights supported on the levers closely approximate the actual weight resistance that is exercised against, a feature that is not always true of many cam and chain or pulley exercise machines. This feature becomes important during the initial stages of 20 rehabilitation, when it may be required to exercise against very low weight resistance and keep highly accurate records of actual weight lifted.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention, a low row exercise machine includes a frame, 25 a seat and chest support connected to the frame along a vertical midplane and a pair of levers having upper ends pivotally connected to the frame on opposite sides of the midplane. Intermediate portions of the levers include hubs for holding weighted plates. Handles con- 30 nected at angles to the lower ends of the levers provide natural grasping positions for coupling applied, low row pulling force along two planes of lever motion which converge with respect to the forward facing with the frame to limit further downward pivotal movement of the levers.

The outer vertical planes of pivotal movement naturally accommodate the structure of the human body relative to the pulling motion utilized in a low row 40 motion. As a result, a person supported on the seat is able to maximize the muscular benefits attainable by performing a low row exercise, while minimizing joint stress. Use of this invention provides exercise for the low row muscle group in a manner that does not stress 45 joints or skeletal structure associated with this muscle

The structural orientation of this low row exercise machine evolved from applicant's belief that most exercise machines oversimplify the musculoskeletal move- 50 ments of the human body. While his accumulated years of observing and analyzing athletic movements of the body led him to conclude that most musculoskeletal movements are rather complex and involve multiple joints and multiple degrees of freedom, he also recog- 55 nized that most exercise machines require bodily movement in directions or planes that are oriented simply at right angles or parallel to the torso of the body. Based on these observations, and bolstered by his opinion that the ultimate objective of any exercise machine is to 60 provide maximum muscular benefit with minimum joint stress, applicant perceived a need for improvement in the design of exercise machines and began working toward that goal. Feedback from athletes who have it constitutes a marked improvement over pre-existing machines or free weight methods for performing a low row exercise.

This low row exercise machine provides the benefits of both free weight exercise and exercise with weight machines, while avoiding the attendant disadvantages commonly associated with these methods of exercising.

With this machine, the moment arm about the pivot point is lowest upon initiation of the pulling motion, then the moment arm increases to a maximum and then finally, the moment arm decreases somewhat. This "resistance curve" is produced by the initial starting angle of the weight supporting segment of the levers. It is believed that this resistance curve substantially matches the strength curve of the low row muscle group, and that this feature enables this low row exercise machine to maximize muscular benefit attainable during performance of a low row motion.

These and other features of the invention will be more readily understood in view of the following detailed description and the drawings in which:

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a perspective view of a low row exercise machine in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 2 is a plan view of the low row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1.

FIG. 3 is a side view of the low row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1.

FIG. 4 is a front view of the low row exercise machine shown in FIG. 1.

# DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIGS. 1-4 show a low row exercise machine 10 in direction of the seat. Stops mounted on the levers coact 35 accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention. This machine 10 includes a frame 11 made of a number of straight and/or curved sections of heavy duty steel that are either welded or bolted together, or pivotally connected. Overall, the front to back dimension of the machine 10 is about 52", the width is about 57", and the height is about 64". A seat 13 and a chest support 14 are connected to the frame 11 along a vertical midplane 16 (best shown in FIG. 2) which bisects the machine 10. The machine 10 is symmetric with respect to the vertical midplane 16. Generally, in this description, even numbers are used to designate parts on the left side of the midplane 16, and odd numbers are used to designate parts on the right side of the midplane, as viewed looking forwardly from seat 13 in FIG. 1.

Levers 18 and 19 are connected to the frame 11 on opposite sides of the midplane 16, and located in front of the seat 13 and chest support 14. Levers 18 and 19 have first ends 22 and 23, respectively, which are pivotally connected to the frame 11. Each lever includes an intermediately located hub for supporting one or more weighted plates, and a handle connected at an angle to a lower end thereof. As shown in FIG. 1, lever 18 includes hub 24 which supports weight 26, and handle 28 is adapted to be grasped and pulled by an exerciser (not shown) supported on the seat 13 during a low row exercise motion. Lever 19 includes hub 25 which supports weight 27, and handle 29. More particularly, each lever is made up of upper and lower connected metal segments. Lever 18 includes upper segment 30 and used this low row exercise machine has confirmed that 65 lower segment 32, while lever 19 includes upper segment 31 and lower segment 33. The angle of connection between the upper and lower segments of levers 18 and 19 is preferably about 80°.

Levers 18 and 19 further include outwardly extending stops 34 and 35, respectively which coact with pads 36 and 37, respectively, mounted on the frame 11 to restrict further downward pivotal motion of the levers when in an at rest position. For additional structural 5 support, each of the levers also includes a brace which spans diagonally between the first and second segments. Lever 18 includes brace 38, and lever 19 includes brace

The frame 11 of the machine 10 further includes side 10 bottom pieces 42 and 43 and center bottom piece 44. Upright 45 extends upwardly from center bottom piece 44. Upright 45 supports seat 13 and chest support 14. Preferably, connection between upright 45 and center bottom piece 44 is by bolting of a plate 47 welded to a 15 bottom end of the upright 45. The seat 13 is vertically adjustable along upright 45. To provide adjustability, parallel surfaces 49 and 50 sandwich the front and back surfaces of upright 45, and these surfaces frictionally engage parallel, spaced bars connected transversely 20 between forwardly extending connectors 52 and 53 (FIG. 2) which support the bottom of seat 13.

Center bottom piece 44 is preferably connected at its outermost end by bolts to bottom pieces 42 and 43 via plates 58 and 59 welded at forwardly converging an- 25 gles. The four outermost corners of the frame 11 are also supported on similarly sized plates 61, 62, 63 and 64, which facilitate secured placement of the machine 10 in an exercise room, or during transportation.

Each side of the frame 11 includes a straight, rear leg 30 rigidly connected at a forwardly extending angle and a front leg rigidly connected at a rearwardly extending angle. As shown in FIG. 1, rear leg 66 and front leg 68 are located on one side of the machine 10, and rear leg machine 10. Diagonal braces 70 and 71 extend between the respective bottom piece and front legs of the machine. An intermediate brace 72 extends horizontally between front legs 68 and 69 and a center support 73

Upper portions of front legs 68 and 69 bend rearwardly toward the respective rear legs 66 and 67. Upper ends of the rear legs are welded to the bottom surfaces of the rearward bent portions of the front legs. Upper- 45 most portions 76 and 77 of front legs 68 and 69 extend beyond the tops of the welded rear legs 66 and 67, respectively. A forwardly and downwardly curved brace 79 extends between the tops of rear legs 66 and 67. Preferably the angle of bend of the curved brace 79 is 50 about 145°, as shown best in FIG. 2. Rearwardly and upwardly extending members 82 and 83 are welded to the top surface of curved brace 79, and members 82 and 83 are located opposite from inwardly directed surfaces of uppermost portions 76 and 77, respectively. Axles 84 55 accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invenand 85 extend horizontally between uppermost portion 76 and member 82 and uppermost portion 77 and member 83, respectively, and the axles are connected thereto at their ends by bearings (not shown). Preferably, the bearings used are pillow block bearings sold by 60 Browning, Part No. VF2S16. These bearings require maintenance only once a year, maintenance which consists of one shot of lubricating oil per year. Axles 84 and 85 are rigidly secured to upper segments 30 and 31, respectively, of levers 18 and 19.

Each of the axles is oriented perpendicular with an outer plane of vertical motion through which a respective lever moves when it is pulled by the exerciser. This

is most clearly shown in FIG. 2. Angles 88 and 89 designate the angles of convergence of the sides of the frame 11 with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat 13 and chest support 14. This angle is preferably about 17°. As described previously, the convergence of the outer planes of lever movement more naturally accommodate the musculoskeletal makeup of the human body during performance of a low row exercise motion. FIG. 2 also shows the angle of connection of each of the handles 28 and 29 to its respective lever 18 or 19. Preferably, each handle is made of metal and curved at one end which is then welded within a recess at the lower end of a respective lever. Opposite ends of the handles angle upwardly and forwardly with respect to the frame so that the handles are not perpendicular to the bottoms of the levers. Each handle is bent at an angle of about 80°, an angle designated by numeral 98 and shown best in FIG. 2. The free end of each lever is displaced angularly downwardly from the respective lower segment at an angle of about 80°, an angle designated by numeral 99 and shown best in FIG. 4.

FIG. 3 shows a side view of the low row exercise machine 10 in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention. Numeral 90 designates the vertical distance between bottom piece 42 and axle 84, a distance which is preferably about 59½". FIG. 3 also shows the preferable angle of connection between upper segment 30 and lower segment 32 of lever 18. This angle is designated by numeral 92 and, as mentioned previously, is preferably about 80°. Upper segment 30 has a preferable length of about 23", and lower segment 32 has a preferable length of about 32½". The distance along upper segment 30 between axle 84 and the location of connection with lower segment 32 is designated by 67 and front leg 69 are located on an opposite side of the 35 numeral 94, and is preferably about 16½". When in an at rest position, lever 18 is situated such that upper segment 30 resides at an angle of about 65° displaced from vertical, an angle designated by numeral 96.

The initial starting angle, the lengths of the upper and extends between the intermediate brace 72 and upright 40 lower segments and the angle of connection therebetween combine to provide a lever 18 which feels unweighted when there are no plates on the hub. As a result, as explained earlier, this facilitates exercise of very low weights, and is particularly useful during rehabilitation of an injury. It also provides a lever 18 which has its minimum moment arm upon initiation of pulling during a low row exercise. The moment arm increases until segment 30 is horizontal, and then it decreases again. Lever 19 utilizes the same structural orientation

> Because this machine 10 utilizes two independently pivotable levers 18 and 19, independent exercise of both arms through a low row exercise motion is possible. FIG. 4 shows a front view of the exercise machine 10 in

While a preferred embodiment of the invention has been described, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited thereby and that in light of the present disclosure, various other alternative embodiments will be apparent to a person skilled in the art. For instance, the structural orientation of some parts or portions of the frame 11 is not critical, so long as the positioning of the lever pivot points, the lengths of the lever sections, 65 handles, the seat and chest support and the vertical planes of motion are maintained. Additionally, while the particular angles shown in this application are considered to be optimum at this point in time, based upon

feedback from those involved in strength training, it is entirely possible that some further refinements may evolve. Accordingly, it is to be understood that changes may be made without departing from the scope of the invention as particularly set forth and claimed.

- 1. A low row exercise machine comprising:
- a frame:
- a seat connected to the frame along a vertical midplane and adapted to support an exerciser in a for- 10 ward facing direction; and
- a lever having a first end pivotally connected to the frame in front of and above the seat, the lever also including weight supporting means adapted for holding a selectable weight resistance, the lever 15 further having a second end adapted to be grasped by the hand of an exerciser supported on the seat and pulled toward the seat in a low row exercise motion, the second end adapted to be grasped so that the thumb of the hand is directly generally 20 inwardly toward the midplane and the palm of the hand is directed generally downwardly, the lever being pivotal through a plane of motion which converges with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat so that the hand moves away from 25 midplane when pulled toward the seat.
- 2. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 wherein said pivotal plane of motion converges at an angle of about 17°.
- 3. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 and fur- 30 ther comprising:
  - a chest support connected to the frame in front of the seat to support the chest of the exerciser during performance of a low row exercise.
- 4. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 and fur- 35 respective second end at an angle other than 90°. ther comprising:
  - a handle connected to the second end of the lever at an angle other than 90°.
- 5. The low row exercise machine of claim 4 wherein the lever further comprises:
  - a first segment having upper and lower ends, the upper end pivotally connected to the frame and weight supporting means located at the lower end; and
  - ment between said upper and lower ends, and the handle connected to a bottom end of the second segment.
- 6. The low row exercise machine of claim 5 wherein said second segment further includes an outwardly ex- 50 tending stop adapted to coact with the frame to limit downward pivotal motion of the lever with respect to the frame.
- 7. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 wherein said weight support means comprises a hub rigidly con- 55 nected to the lever.
- 8. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 wherein the seat is vertically adjustable with respect to the frame.
- 9. The low row exercise machine of claim 1 and fur- 60 ther comprising:
  - a second lever pivotally connected to the frame and symmetric with the first lever with respect to the vertical midplane.
- 10. The low row exercise machine of claim 9 wherein 65 both levers pivot through planes of motion which converge at angles of about 17° with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat.

- 11. A low row exercise machine comprising:
- a frame:
- a pad connected to the frame along a vertical midplane and adapted to support an exerciser in a forward facing direction;
- a pair of levers located on opposite sides of the midplane, each lever including a first end pivotally connected to the frame above and in front of the pad, each lever further including an intermediately connected hub adapted to hold a selectable weight resistance and a handle at a second end thereof. below the pad, adapted to be grasped and pulled in a low row exercise motion by the hand of an exerciser supported by a rearwardly directed surface of the pad, each handle adapted to be grasped so that the thumb of the respective hand is directed generally inwardly toward the midplane and the palm of the hand is directed generally downwardly, the levers pivotal through outer planes of motion which converge toward the midplane with respect to the front of the pad so that the hands move away from the midplane when pulled toward the seat.
- 12. The low row exercise machine of claim 11 and further comprising:
  - a seat connected to the frame behind the pad for supporting the exerciser during performance of the low row exercise.
- 13. The low row exercise machine of claim 12 wherein the seat is vertically adjustable.
- 14. The low row exercise machine of claim 11 wherein the outer planes of pivotal motion converge at angles of about 17°.
- 15. The low row exercise machine of claim 11 wherein each of the lever handles is connected to a
- 16. The low row exercise machine of claim 11 wherein each lever further includes:
  - an upper segment pivotally connected to the frame and adapted to support a hub and a lower segment connected to the upper segment at an angle and adapted to support the respective handle; and
  - a brace segment connected between said first and second segments.
- 17. The low row exercise machine of claim 16 a second segment rigidly connected to the first seg- 45 wherein each lever further includes an outwardly extending stop located on a lower segment thereof adapted to coact with the frame to limit downward pivotal movement of the respective lever with respect to the frame.
  - 18. The low row exercise machine comprising: a frame;
  - a seat and support connected to the frame along a vertical midplane; and
  - a pair of low row exercise means, each low row exercise means pivotally connected to the frame on opposite sides of the midplane above and in front of the seat and support, each pair of low row exercise means including a handle located below the support and adapted to be grasped and pulled rearwardly toward the support in a low row exercise motion by the hand of an exerciser seated on the seat and supported against the support, each handle adapted to be grasped so that the thumb of the respective hand is directed generally inwardly toward the midplane and the palm of the hand is directed generally downwardly, pivotal movement of each low row exercise means occurring in a plane which converges with respect to the forward

facing direction of the seat so that the hands move away from the midplane when pulled toward the

wherein each low row exercise means further includes a handle connected to a lower end thereof at an angle

other than 90° to accommodate natural musculoskeletal makeup of a person performing a low row exercise.

20. The low row exercise machine of claim 18 wherein the outer planes of pivotal movement converge 19. The low row exercise machine of claim 18 5 with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat at angles of about 17°.

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

60

65



# United States Patent [19]

# Tones

[11] Patent Number:

5,135,449

[45] Date of Patent:

Aug. 4, 1992

[54]	ROWING I	EXERCISE MACHINE
[75]	Inventor:	Gary A. Jones, Falmouth, Ky.
[73]	Assignee:	Hammer Strength Corporation, Cincinnati, Ohio
[21]	Appl. No.:	586,426
[22]	Filed:	Sep. 21, 1990
[51]	Inf. Cl.5	A63B 69/06
		<b></b>
f1		482/134; 482/136; 482/137
[58]	Field of Sea	arch 272/72, 134, 118, 117;
		272/118, 117
[56]		References Cited
	11 0 1	ATENT DOCUMENTS

# U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,563,003 4,603,855 4,614,338 4,635,926 4,720,099	12/1976 12/1980 1/1986 8/1986 9/1986 1/1987 1/1988	Jones .  Lambert, Jr
4,722,522	2/1988	Carlson

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

2170413 8/1986 United Kingdom ...... 272/118

# OTHER PUBLICATIONS

"Cybex" Brochure; Dec. 1989; 6 pages. "Dynamics" Brochure; Sep. 1979; 6 pages.

Brochure "Leverage Machines" by Nautilus ®, In-

struction Manual, p. 17, 1989.

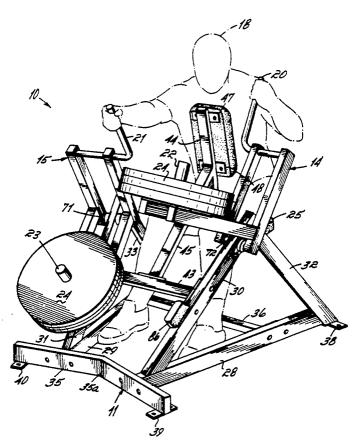
Primary Examiner—Richard J. Apley Assistant Examiner—D. F. Crosby

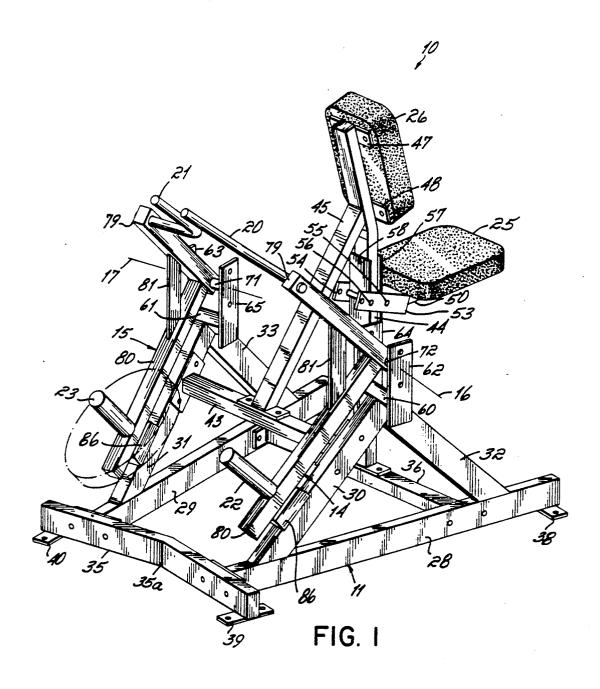
Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Wood, Herron & Evans

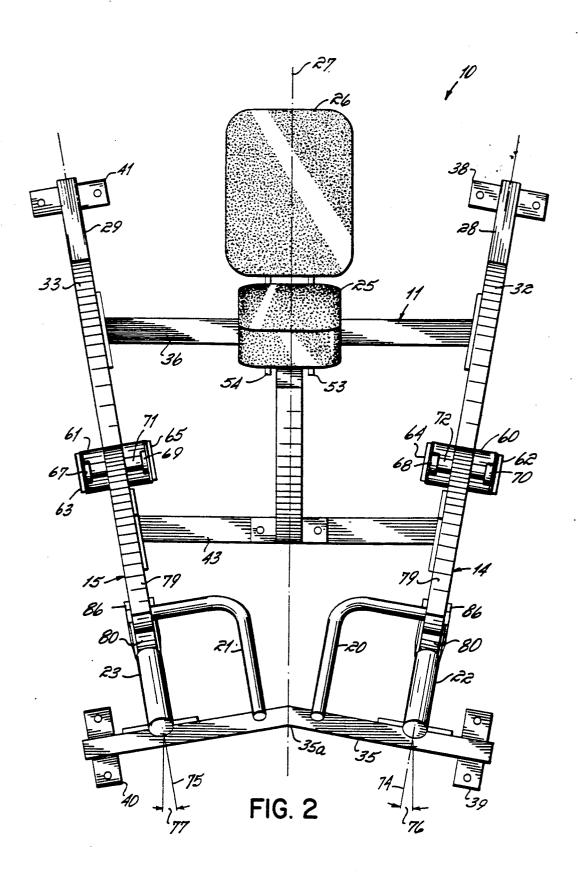
# [57] ABSTRACT

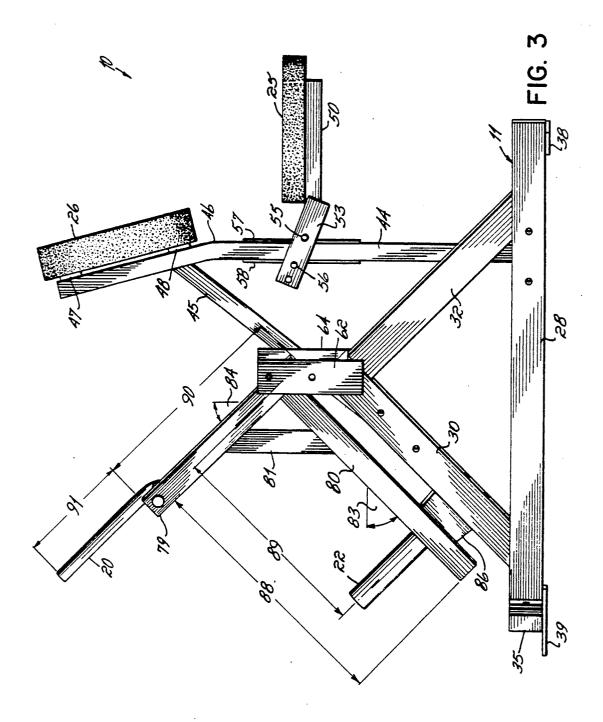
A rowing exercise machine includes a frame, a seat and a chest brace supported by the frame, and a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame in front of the brace and seat. Each of the levers has a lower end adapted to support at least one removable weight and a handle at an upper end adapted to be grasped by an exerciser supported on the seat. During the performance of a rowing exercise, the exerciser pulls the handles upwardly and rearwardly to pivot the levers against the weight resistances held by the lower ends. The levers move along two outer vertical planes that converge with respect to the forward direction of the seat, and each of the levers pivots independently with respect to the frame.

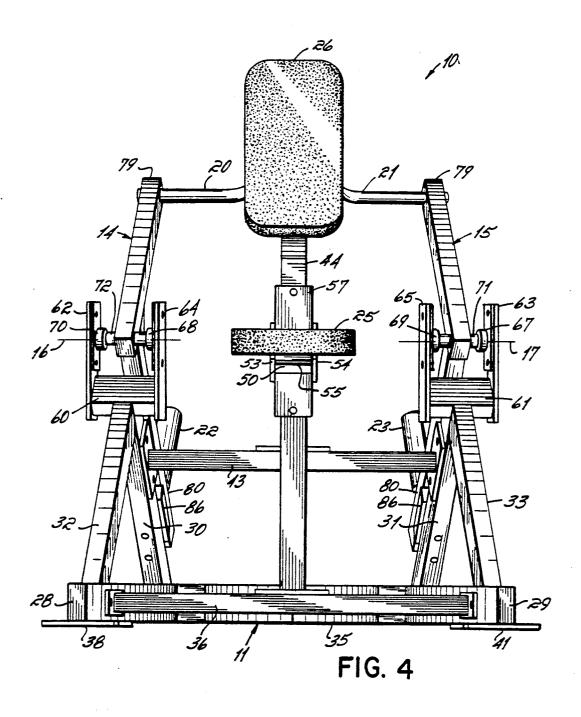
# 15 Claims, 5 Drawing Sheets

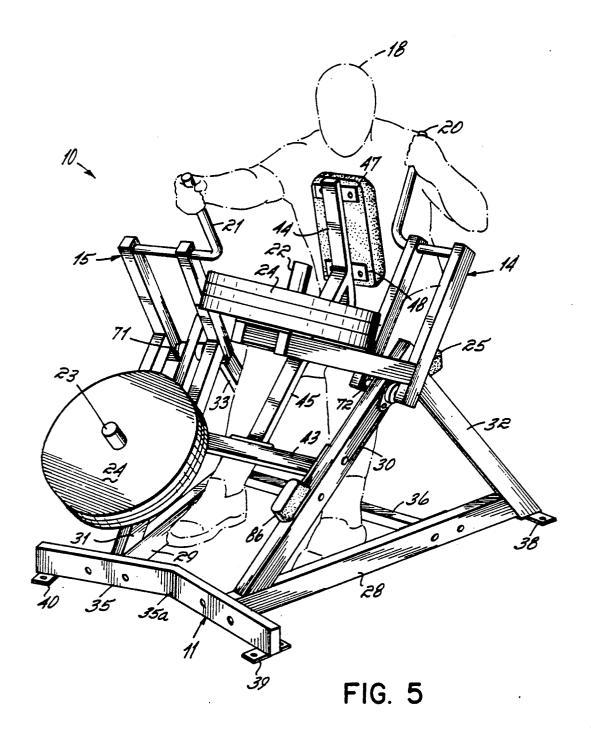












#### ROWING EXERCISE MACHINE

# FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to an improved rowing exercise machine that accommodates the musculoskeletal makeup of a person.

# BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Many athletes and non-athletes utilize weight lifting 10 or weight training exercises to build strength and/or bulk, to prevent injury, or to improve overall condition and appearance. Typically, weight training exercises are performed with either exercise machines or free weights, i.e., barbells and weighted plates, dumbbells, etc. For various reasons, most exercise programs incorporate both machines and free weights in a variety of different exercise routines in order to maximize the effect of working out a desired number of muscle

On one hand, free weights offer a number of advantages over exercise machines. For one, they are relatively inexpensive in comparison. Free weights are also more versatile because a variety of exercises can be performed with one set of weights, whereas most exer- 25 cise machines are designed for only one exercise. For those exercise machines which do provide for more than one exercise, cost usually increases proportionately with the number of exercises. Another advantage may be more psychological than actual, but many 30 "power" lifters simply prefer the lifting and moving of heavy weighted plates, or the "feel" of free weights. Finally, free weights are popular among many weight lifters because the lifting movements are not restricted to prescribed planes of motion and at prescribed angles 35 determined by a machine.

However, there are a number of inherent disadvantages associated with free weights. One such disadvantage relates to safety. Although most weight room instructors strongly advise against an individual working 40 out by himself or herself, this cautionary measure is particularly important when the lifting of free weights is involved. This is due to commonly recognized dangers such as the possibility of dropping a weight on a body part, or becoming trapped beneath a bar, which could 45 easily occur in exercises such as bench press, incline press or squat. Additionally, through carelessness, loading and unloading of heavy weighted plates onto the ends of a bar sometimes results in an unbalanced bar that falls downward from its rack.

For this reason, a number of "leverage" machines have been developed over the past few years in an effort to combine the safety advantages of an exercise machine with the feel and psychological "lift" provided by ing exercise machine. This enables an exerciser to perform an exercise commonly referred to as a "rowing exercise." While supported upon a seat connected to a frame, the exerciser leans forward and grasps the two handles of a lever which holds a barbell with weighted 60 plates. By pulling the handles rearwardly, the weight is pivoted upwardly, toward the exerciser.

While this lever rowing exercise machine represents an advantage over the prior alternative, that of performing a rowing exercise without the benefit of a machine 65 and at greater injury risk, even this lever rowing exercise machine suffers from a subtle disadvantage that most weight lifters apparently have assumed to be in-

herent with all exercise machines. That is, the planes and angles of prescribed movement do not seem quite right in relation to the musculoskeletal structure of a normal person. In short, this lever rowing exercise machine does not seem to "fit" the human body. As a result, some individuals experience excessive joint stress or compression from use of this machine, or machines of this type.

Moreover, although the prior lever rowing exercise machine could be used to exercise one arm at a time, it was not designed specifically for that purpose. As a result, performance of one-handed rowing exercise on this machine may even further accentuate the awkwardness that is felt by an exerciser. This is particularly disadvantageous during rehabilitation, when it is often desirable to monitor and compare the relative strength of a previously injured, recovering limb with a healthy

It is therefore an object of the invention to provide an 20 improved rowing exercise machine which, compared to prior machines, more naturally accommodates the musculoskeletal movements of a person's body.

It is another object of the invention to provide an improved rowing exercise machine that maximizes the exercise benefit attainable during a rowing motion while minimizing skeletal or joint stress.

It is still another object of the invention to provide an improved rowing exercise machine with increased versatility in exercising one arm at a time.

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention contemplates a rowing exercise machine with a frame, a seat supported by the frame and two, independently movable levers that are pivotally connected to the frame in front of the seat. The ends of the levers have handles that are grasped and pulled rearwardly, either independently or simultaneously, to pivotally raise, with respect to the frame, weighted plates supported on hubs at the lower ends of the levers.

The frame has sides that converge toward the front of the machine and diverge in the rearward direction. The levers are mounted to the converging frame sides and move through corresponding, forward converging planes. When compared to prior rowing exercise machines, the outer planes of movement of this machine more naturally accommodate the musculoskeletal structure of the human body. Moreover, by providing two independently operable levers that are designed to 50 match the natural movement of muscles of one side with respect to the entire body, this improved rowing exercise machine is particularly suitable for rehabilitation after an injury.

In accordance with the objects of this invention, a free weights. One such machine is referred to as a row- 55 rowing exercise machine preferably includes a frame, a seat and a forwardly declined support brace connected to the frame and two levers, each lever pivotally connected to a forwardly converging side of the frame. Each lever has a handle located at its upper end and a weight supporting hub connected to a lower end. The lever pivot axes are located above and in front of the seat and are perpendicular to their respective sides of the frame. When the handles are grasped and pulled rearwardly and upwardly, the arcuate paths traversed by the handles and the levers lie along vertical planes that diverge rearwardly with respect to the seat.

Initially, when the levers are at rest, the handles are closest to one another, and they move farther apart as 3

the rowing motion progresses. The angled orientation of the levers and the handles with respect to the forward facing direction of the seat, along with the declined angle of the chest brace, places the exerciser in a natural position for coupling the applied pulling motion of the rowing exercise along two outer planes of motion that seem to more naturally accommodate the structure of the human body, relative to this maneuver. As a result, a person supported on the seat is able to maximize the muscular benefits during a rowing motion.

The evolution of this rowing exercise machine resulted from years of study, by the inventor, of athletic movements of the body relative to commonly performed weight training maneuvers. Based on his obser- 15 vations and experience in both fields, he concluded that most athletic movements involve compound motion of multiple joints, while exercise machines are designed for movements that are perpendicular or parallel to the torso. According to this view, most exercise machines 20 oversimplify the body's movements, and there is a genuine need for improvement. Based upon feedback from athletes and other individuals involved in weight training, the rowing exercise machine of this invention constitutes a significant improvement over prior rowing 25 and pulls the levers rearwardly against the weight supmachines.

This rowing exercise machine provides the benefits of both free weights and exercise machines without the attendant disadvantages commonly associated with either of these methods of exercising.

For this rowing exercise machine, the resistance variation through the course of the rowing movement is similar to the resistance variation provided by the prior lever type rowing machine. However, it is not identical.  $_{35}$ The angles and lengths of the forward ends of the levers and the locations of the pivot axes with respect to the seat and the chest brace have been structurally arranged to make it slightly easier to initiate the rearward rowing motion, and slightly more difficult to continue move- 40 ment once the motion has been initiated, and then easier again at the end of the motion. This compensates for the initial acceleration that is required to commence the pulling force and the reduction in force caused by the momentum of a moving lever, and a terminal decelera- 45 tion at the end of the movement. This differs from the one known prior lever rowing machine, which seems to become progressively more difficult through the rowing motion.

more readily understood in view of the following detailed description and the drawings in which:

# **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

machine in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 2 is a top view of the exercise machine shown in position.

FIG. 3 is a side view of the rowing exercise machine shown in FIG. 2.

FIG. 4 is a rear view of the rowing exercise machine shown in FIG. 2.

FIG. 5 is a perspective view of an alternative embodiment of the invention with an exerciser seated on the machine performing a rowing exercise.

# DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE **DRAWINGS**

FIGS. 1-4 show a rowing exercise machine 10 in accordance with the preferred embodiment of the invention. Machine 10 includes a frame 11 made of a number of straight and/or curved sections of heavy duty steel that are either welded or bolted together, or pivotally connected. Exercise levers 14 and 15 are piv-10 otally connected to the frame 11 and pivot about pivot axes 16 and 17, respectively. An exerciser 18 (see FIG. 5) grasps handles 20 and 21 to pivot levers 14 and 15 in an upward direction. When grasping, the palms of the exerciser 18 face inwardly, perpendicular to the forward facing direction of the exerciser 18, and the thumbs point in an upward direction. The lower ends of the levers 14 and 15 include hubs 22 and 23, respectively, which are adapted to hold one or more removable weights 24.

During the performance of a rowing exercise on this machine 10, the exerciser 18 is supported on a seat 25 that is connected to the frame 11. While supported on the seat 25 in a direction facing the levers 14 and 15, the exerciser 18 leans forwardly against the chest brace 26 ported upon the hubs 22 and 23, respectively.

The frame 11 is longitudinally symmetric about a vertical midplane 27, shown more clearly in FIG. 2. Each side of the frame 11 includes bottom support that 30 is connected to and supportive of front and rear legs. As shown in FIG. 1, bottom leg 28 is connected to, and supports front leg 30 and rear leg 32 on the left side of the machine, as viewed by an exerciser 18 supported on seat 25. Similarly, the right side of the machine includes bottom support 29 and front leg 31 and rear leg 33.

A front brace 35 connects the forward ends of bottom supports 28 and 29. The front brace 34 includes a centrally located bend 35a where it intersects vertical midplane 27. A rear brace 36 also connects bottom supports 28 and 29. As shown in FIG. 1, the ends of rear brace 36, and the forward ends of bottom supports 28 and 29 have plates welded thereon, with bolts (not shown) extending therethrough to provide connection. Preferably, the frame 11 is supported upon outer plates 38, 39, 40 and 41 (FIG. 2) welded to the outermost corners of the machine. Bolt holes through these plates enable the machine 10 to be secured in place, or secured to a removable frame during transportation.

A lateral brace 43 extends through midplane 27 and is These and other features of the invention will be 50 connected to inside surfaces of front legs 30 and 31. An upright 44 extends upwardly from rear brace 36. The upright 44 supports both the seat 25 and the brace 26. For additional stability, a diagonal brace 45 extends between lateral brace 43 and upright 44. As shown FIG. 1 is a perspective view of a rowing exercise 55 more clearly in FIG. 3, upright 44 bends forwardly at point 46 between seat 25 and chest brace 26. Chest brace 26 is connected to the upper end of upright 44 by welded plates 47 and 48, preferably declining forwardly at an angle of about 15°. The seat 25 is supported upon FIG. 1, with both exercise levers located in an at rest 60 arm 50 which is rigidly connected between plates 53 and 54. Plates 53 and 54 are connected to each other by a pair of spaced rods 55 and 56 that frictionally engage a pair of spaced pads 57 and 58 mounted to upright 44. This enables seat 2 to be vertically adjustable along upright 44 to accommodate different heights.

A connective structure for pivotally supporting the levers 14 and 15 are located, on each side of the frame, where the front and rear legs contact each other. As

best shown in FIG. 4, on the left side of the frame, a horizontally oriented support 60 connected between the upper ends of front leg 30 and rear leg 32. A pair of plates 62 and 64 are rigidly connected to the ends of the support 60. The plates 62 and 64 extend upwardly, and 5 have bearings 68 and 70 connected to facing surfaces thereof along axis 16. An axle 72 rigidly connected to lever 14 seats within the bearings 68 and 70 to render the lever 14 pivotal about axis 16. Similarly, on the right side of the frame, horizontal support 61 is connected to 10 front leg 31 and rear leg 33. Plates 63 and 65 are rigidly connected to the ends of support 61 and extend upwardly therefrom. Inwardly directed surfaces of plates 63 and 65 have bearings 67 and 69 connected thereto, along axis 17. An axle 71 rigidly connected to lever 15 15 is seated within the bearings to render lever 15 pivotal with respect to the frame.

As shown most clearly in FIG. 2, levers 14 and 15 pivot along outer planes 74 and 75, respectively, that converge with respect to the forward direction of the 20 frame 11. Thus, for an exerciser 18 supported on the seat 25, levers 14 and 15 are pulled rearwardly and outwardly during performance of a rowing exercise. Numerals 76 and 77 designate the angles of convergence of planes 74 and 75 with respect to frame 11. Preferably, 25

this angle is about 10°.

As shown in FIG. 3, lever 14 includes an upper member 79 rigidly connected to a lower member 80. A diagonally connected brace 81 provides additional stability between members 79 and 80. Preferably, the angle of 30 connection between member 79 and member 80 is about 90°. In an initial at rest position, lower member 80 resides at an angle removed from horizontal of about 45°, designated by numeral 83. Thus, upper member 79 is displaced from vertical plane at an angle designated by 35 numeral 84, which is also about 45°. To prevent metalto-metal contact between lever 14 and the frame 11, a pad 86 is connected to front leg 30. Although not shown, lever 15 includes the same parts, with the same dimensions and the same angles of orientation. Lower 40 member 80 preferably has a length 88 of about 23', and the distance 89 between the pivot axis 16 and hub 22 is about 19. The member 79 extends a length of about 19", designated by numeral 90, and handle 20 extends an additional length of about 10.5", designated by numeral 45

As shown in FIG. 2, each handle comprises a bar welded to the upper member of the respective lever. The bar extends inwardly toward midplane 24 and then bends upwardly and forwardly at a right angle to a 50 position that is parallel with respect to the upper member of the respective lever.

FIG. 5 shows an earlier embodiment of the invention. According to this embodiment, each lever included a pair of connected upper and lower members. It was 55 originally thought that the frame 10 would need this additional structural stability to handle the amount of weight that is typically lifted by larger athletes. Compared to the preferred embodiment shown in FIGS. 1-4, the sides of the frame of the machine shown in 60 FIG. 5 converge at sharper angles. Moreover, the declined angle of the chest brace is closer to vertical. Subsequent refinements of the machine to its present structural form, as shown in FIGS. 1-4, resulted from feedback from athletes who used the machine.

While I have described a preferred embodiment of this invention, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited thereby and that in light of the present disclosure of the invention, various other alternative embodiments will be apparent to a person skilled in the art. For instance, the structural orientation of some parts of the frame 11 is not critical, so long as the positioning of the seat 25 and brace 26 with respect to the locations of the pivot points and the lever lengths and angles is maintained. Additionally, while the particular angles shown are considered to be optimum at this point in time, based upon feedback from those involved in strength training, it is entirely possible that some further refinements may evolve. Accordingly, it is to be understood that changes may be made without departing from the scope of the invention as particularly set forth and claimed.

6

I claim:

- 1. A rowing exercise machine comprising:
- a frame;
- a chest brace supported by the frame and centered longitudinally on a vertical midplane, the frame being longitudinally symmetrical with respect to the vertical midplane, and the chest brace adapted to support an exerciser facing a forward direction along the vertical midplane; and
- a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame in front of the brace, each lever having a lower end adapted to support at least one removable weight and an upper end adapted to be grasped, with palms facing the midplane and thumbs pointed upwardly, and then pulled upwardly and rearwardly in a row motion along an outer vertical plane by an exerciser located on an opposite side of the brace, the levers being independently pivotal with respect to the frame and the outer vertical planes converging with respect to the forward facing direction.
- 2. The rowing exercise machine of claim 1 wherein each outer vertical plane converges at an angle of about 10° with respect to the forward facing direction.
- 3. The rowing exercise machine of claim 1 and further comprising:
  - a seat supported by the frame behind the chest brace.
- 4. The rowing exercise machine of claim 3 and further comprising:

means for selectively adjusting the vertical position of the seat.

- 5. The rowing exercise machine of claim 1 wherein the chest brace is inclined from the horizontal toward the front of the frame.
- 6. The rowing exercise machine of claim 1 wherein each lever further comprises:
  - an upper lever member pivotally connected to the frame at a pivot point located in front of the chest
  - a lower lever member rigidly connected to the upper lever member adjacent the pivot point; and
  - a handle connected to a top end of the upper lever member, the handle having a first section extending inwardly toward the vertical midplane and a second section extending parallel with the respective
- 7. The rowing exercise machine of claim 6 wherein the upper and lower members of each of said levers are 65 connected at an angle of about 90°.
  - 8. The rowing exercise machine of claim 7 wherein the initial at rest position of the upper member is about 45° from vertical.

- 9. The rowing exercise machine of claim 6 wherein the initial at rest position of the lower member is about 45° from horizontal.
  - 10. A rowing exercise machine comprising:
  - a frame;
  - a chest brace supported by the frame and centered on a longitudinal vertical midplane through the frame, the frame being longitudinally symmetrical with respect to the vertical midplane and the chest brace adapted to support an exerciser facing a forward 10 direction along the vertical midplane; and
  - a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame in front of the brace, each lever having a lower end adapted to support at least one removable weight and an upper end adapted to be grasped, with 15 palms facing the midplane and thumbs pointed upwardly, and then pulled upwardly and rearwardly in a row motion along an outer vertical plane by an exerciser located behind the brace, wherein the handles are a predetermined distance 20 apart when the levers are in an initial, at rest position, and the outer vertical planes converge with respect to the forward facing direction so that the distance between the handles increases as the levers are pulled rearwardly.
  - 11. A rowing exercise machine comprising:
  - a frame:
  - a seat supported by the frame and centered on a vertical midplane through the frame, the frame being longitudinally symmetrical with respect to the vertical midplane and the seat brace adapted to sup-

- port an exerciser facing a forward direction along the midplane;
- a chest brace connected to the frame in front of the seat; and
- a pair of levers pivotally connected to the frame in front of the seat, each lever having a lower end adapted to support at least one removable weight and an upper end adapted to be grasped, with palms facing the midplane and thumbs pointed upwardly, and then pulled upwardly and rearwardly in a row motion along an outer vertical plane by an exerciser supported on the seat behind the brace, each of the outer planes converging forwardly toward the vertical midplane.
- 12. The rowing exercise machine of claim 11 wherein each of the outer planes converges forwardly at an angle of about 10° with respect to the forward facing direction.
- 13. The rowing exercise machine of claim 11 wherein the frame further comprises:
  - a vertical upright to which the seat connects; and means for vertically adjusting the seat along the upright.
- 14. The rowing exercise machine of claim 11 wherein the chest brace is inclined from the horizontal toward the front of the frame.
- 15. The rowing exercise machine of claim 14 wherein the chest brace is inclined from horizontal at an angle of about 75°

35

40

45

50

55

60

65

# United States Patent [19]

# Jonas et al.

3,265,362

3,940,989

3,964,742

4,047,715

4,084,810

4,396,188

4,452,445

4,765,615

4,632,386 12/1986

4,678,184 7/1987

4,705,269 11/1987

4,718,665 1/1988

4,772,013 9/1988

4,776,587 10/1988

8/1966

3/1976

6/1976

9/1977

4/1978

8/1983

6/1984

8/1988

[11] Patent Number:

4,880,224

[45] Date of Patent:

Nov. 14, 1989

[54]	ROWING MACHINE			
[76]	Inventors:	Werner Jonas, 1142 Ave. Des Erables, Apt. #1, Quebec, Quebec, Canada, G1R 2N2; Nathanial B. Findlay, 1045 Belvedere Ave., Apt. #226, Quebec, Quebec, Canada, G1N 4L4		
[21]	Appl. No.:	259,737		
[22]	Filed:	Oct. 19, 1988		
[51] [52] [58]	Int. Cl. <sup>4</sup>			
[56]		References Cited		

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2,725,231 11/1955 Hoover ...... 272/72

4,789,153 12/1988 Brown ...... 272/72

Moody ...... 74/801 X

Engerstam ...... 272/73 X

Carnielli ...... 272/73

Gjessing ...... 272/72 X

Forsman ...... 128/25 R X

Dreissigacker et al. ..... 272/72

Csekes ...... 272/73

Beech ...... 272/73

Neiger et al. ..... 272/132 X

DeBoer et al. ..... 272/73

Airy et al. ..... 272/132

Case ...... 272/132

# FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

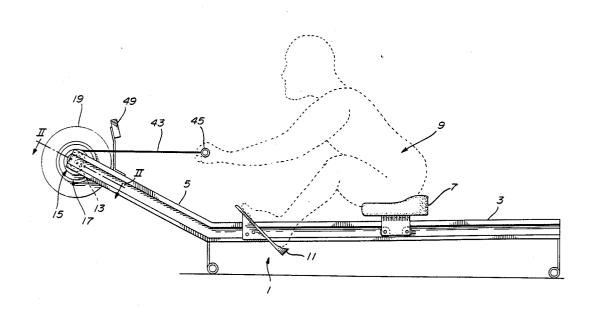
1183559	3/1985	Canada 272/72
		European Pat. Off
545958	2/1932	Fed. Rep. of Germany 272/72
3404562	8/1985	Fed. Rep. of Germany 272/73
8701953	4/1987	PCT Int'l Appl 272/73
1248615	8/1986	U.S.S.R
2175813	12/1986	United Kingdom 272/72

Primary Examiner—Richard J. Apley Assistant Examiner—Robert W. Bahr Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Samuel Meerkreebs

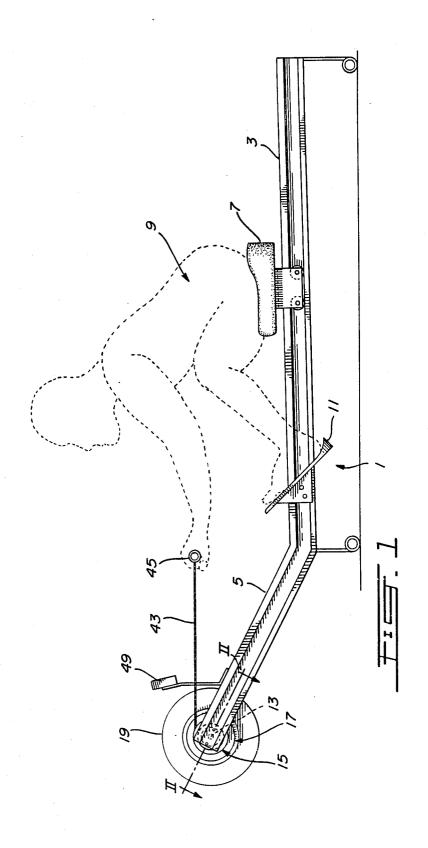
# [57] ABSTRACT

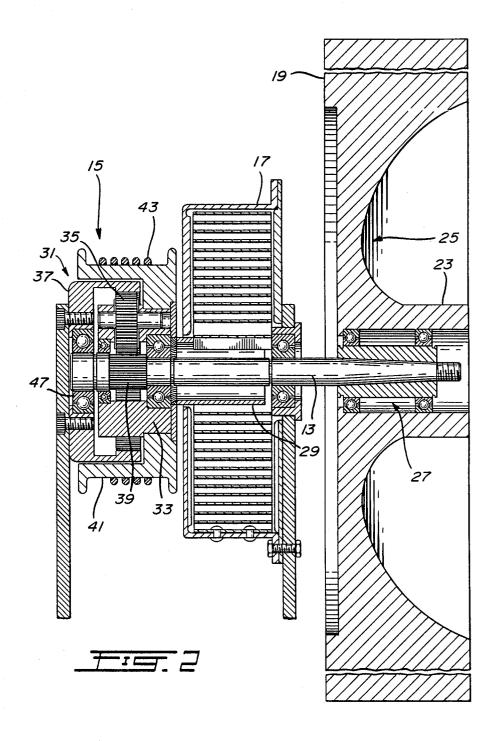
A frame member has a seat mounted thereon, the seat being movable therealong. The frame member also carries feet rests. A shaft is mounted across the frame member at one end thereof, and a flywheel is mounted on the shaft. A planetary gear system having a rotatable carrier, pinion gears mounted in the carrier, a stationary ring gear and a central gear is mounted on the shaft for rotatably driving the flywheel. The central gear is mounted on the shaft for rotation therewith. A spool is mounted on the carrier for rotation therewith. A cable is wound around the spool for providing rotary motion to the spool when the cable is pulled by an exerciser during the rowing stroke. Thus, the rotary motion of the spool is transferred to the flywheel through the planetary gear system and the shaft in a speed increasing mode.

# 3 Claims, 2 Drawing Sheets



# A000229





#### ROWING MACHINE

## BACKGROUND OF INVENTION

#### 1. Field of the Invention

The invention relates to a stationary rowing machine exercising device. More specifically, the invention relates to such a device which simulates the resistance to be overcome in a real-life rowing environment.

2. Description of Prior Art

One such rowing device is illustrated in U.S. Pat. No. 4,396,188, Dreissigacker et al, Aug. 2, 1983, which is exemplary of similar devices also taught in the art. However, it differs from these other devices by using an elastic return means, which is connected to the drive means beyond where the drive means interconnects with a plural gearing means, for returning the handle during the return stroke. In addition, the force for driving the flywheel is applied directly to the shaft of the flywheel without the intervention of either speed increasing or reduction means.

British Patent Application No. 2 175 813A, European Patent Application No. 214-748-A, and U.S. Pat. No. 2,725,231, Hoover, Nov. 29, 1955, also teach rowing machines. However, in these machines, the return 25 means is a spring which is wound up during the rowing stroke and which unwinds to return the drive means

during the return stroke.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,452,445, Csekes, June 5, 1984, U.S. Pat. No. 3,964,742, Carnielli, June 22, 1976, and USSR 30 Patent No. 1248-615-A, teach exercising devices which have a rotating shaft connected to foot pedals. The central gear of a planetary gear system is connected to the shaft to rotate therewith, and the carrier of the planetary gear system is connected to an outer wheel, 35 whereby rotary motion of the shaft is transmitted to the outer wheel in a speed reduction mode.

# SUMMARY OF INVENTION

It is an object of the invention to provide a stationary 40 rowing machine exercising device which includes a flywheel for simulating resistance to be overcome wherein the means for returning comprises a clock spring mounted on the same shaft as the flywheel.

It is a further object of the invention to provide a 45 stationary rowing machine exercising device which uses a planetary gear system to transmit motion of a drive means to the flywheel through a planetary gear

system in a speed increasing mode.

In accordance with the invention there is provided a 50 stationary rowing machine exercising device comprising a frame member and seat means mounted on the frame member and movable therealong. Foot rest means are connected to the frame member so that an exerciser can rest his feet on this foot rest means. A shaft 55 is mounted across the frame at one end thereof. A flywheel is mounted on the shaft. Means for rotatably driving the flywheel are also mounted on the shaft. The means for rotatably driving comprise a planetary gear system having a rotatable carrier, pinion gears mounted 60 in the carrier, a stationary ring gear and a central gear. The central gear is mounted on the shaft for rotation therewith. Spool means are mounted on the carrier for rotation therewith, and cable means are wound around the spool means for providing rotary motion to the 65 spool means when the cable means is pulled by an exerciser during a rowing stroke. Thus, the rotary motion of the spool means is transferred to the flywheel, through

the planetary gear system and the shaft, in a speed increasing mode.

## BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS

The invention will be better understood by an examination of the following description, together with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a side view of the stationary rowing machine exercising device in accordance with the invention; and

FIG. 2, which is a section through II—II of FIG. 1, illustrates the drive means and the return means in accordance with the invention.

# DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Turning now to the drawings, the exercising device comprises a frame, illustrated generally at 1, and including a horizontally extending portion 3 and an upwardly extending portion 5. Seat 7 is mounted on the horizontally extending portion 3 and is movable therealong. An exerciser 9 seats himself on the seat 7 and supports his feet in feet rests 11.

Extending across the outer end of the upwardly extending portion 5 is a shaft 13 (see also FIG. 2). Mounted on the shaft 13 are a means 15 for driving flywheel 19 and a means 17 for returning the flywheel 19 as will be described below.

The flywheel 19 comprises a plurality (eight shown in the drawings) of blades 21 to 21K disposed with equal increment around the flywheel 19. As will be appreciated by one skilled in the art, the flywheel 19 will present resistance to rotation to simulate the resistance experienced when driving oars through water.

Turning now to FIG. 2, flywheel 19 has, at the center thereof, a hub 23 and, in the sides of the vanes or blades 21 to 21K thereof, a circular indent 25 and supporting bearings on either side. Mounted in the hub 23 is a one-way clutch 27. The free end of shaft 13 is connected to the flywheel through the one-way clutch 27. The one-way clutch 27 will connect the shaft 13 to the flywheel 19 for rotation therewith during a rowing stroke, but will disengage the shaft 13 from the flywheel 19 during a return stroke so that the flywheel 19 will not rotate with the shaft 13 during the return stroke.

Spring 17 also includes a hub 29 which is connected to carrier 33 for rotation therewith. During the rowing stroke, the spring 17, which preferably comprises a clock spring, will "wind up". Accordingly, during the return stroke, the spring will unwind to return the means for driving as will be described below.

The means 15 for driving the flywheel 19 comprises a planetary gear system, illustrated generally at 31, and including a carrier 33 which carries pinion gears 35 (usually 3). The teeth on the pinion gears 35 mesh with the teeth of an inner gear on ring gear 37, and also with the teeth on central gear 39. Central gear 39 is connected to shaft 13 for rotation therewith.

Mounted on the carrier 33 for rotation therewith is a spool 41, and cable 43 is wrapped around the spool 41. As seen in FIG. 1, the free end of the cable 43 is connected to a handle 45 which is grasped by the exerciser and pulled by him to rotate spool 41.

The end of shaft 13 is mounted in a bore of the ring gear 37 on bearings 47 so that the shaft rotates relative to the ring gear 37, i.e., the ring gear 37 is stationary relative to the shaft 13.

In operation, the exerciser grasps the handle 45 and, in simulation of a rowing stroke, pulls the cable 43 in the direction of the arrow A unwinding the cable 43 from the spool 41. The spool 41 will accordingly rotate in a clockwise direction in FIG. 1.

Rotation of the spool 41 will cause a similar rotation of carrier 33, which is connected to the spool 41, causing the centers of the pinion gears 35 to rotate, with the carrier 33, about the axis of the carrier 33. During the rotation of the centers of the pinion gears 35, and because the teeth of the pinion gears 35 engage the inner teeth of the stationary ring gear 37, the pinion gears 35 will also rotate about their own axis in a counter-clockwise direction.

The rotation of the pinion gears 35 about their own axis will cause the central gear 39 to also rotate, in a clockwise direction, because of the meshing between the teeth of the pinion gears 35 and the teeth of the central gear 39. As the central gear 39 is attached to the shaft 13, the shaft 13 will also rotate in a clockwise direction. Thus, the rotary motion of the spool is transferred to the shaft 13.

Because the size of central gear 39 of the shaft 13, relative to the sizing of pinion gears 35 and ring gear 37, the shaft 13 will rotate at a greater speed than the spool 41. In a specific embodiment, there is a 6:1 increase in 25 rotary speed from the spool 41 to the shaft 13.

One-way clutch 27 is adapted to engage when shaft 13 rotates in a clockwise direction, and to disengage when shaft 13 rotates in a counter-clockwise direction. Thus, flywheel 19 will be connected to shaft 13 when 30 the exerciser is pulling cable 43 in the direction of arrow A, i.e., during a rowing stroke.

At the same time, when shaft 13 is rotating in a clockwise direction, spring 17 is being wound up.

When the end of the rowing stroke is reached, the 35 exerciser leans forward in the direction opposite to the arrow A. Release of force on the cable 43 will permit spring 17 to unwind thus driving carrier 33 in a counterclockwise direction. When the carrier 33 is rotating in the counter-clockwise direction, the pinion gears 35 will rotate to drive central gear 39, and therefore shaft 13, in the counter-clockwise direction.

When shaft gear 13 rotates in the counter-clockwise direction, clutch 27 disengages so that flywheel 19 does not follow the counter-clockwise rotation.

At the same time, the counter-clockwise rotation of carrier 37 is transmitted to spool 41 so that cable 43 will be rewound on spool 41.

When the end of the return stroke is reached, the exerciser will once again pull the cable 43 in the direction of arrow A in a rowing stroke, etc.

Because the rotary motion of the spool 41 is transferred to the flywheel 19 in a speed increasing mode during the rowing stroke, a smaller flywheel can be used. Accordingly, this arrangement is especially useful for a private home exercising device.

In addition, it simulates a real-life rowing environment in that the amount of force needed to increase speed at a high speed level is greater than the amount of force required to increase speed at a low speed level. That is, the force required to increase the speed from 900 revolutions per minute to 1000 revolutions per minute is greater than the force required to increase the speed from 100 revolutions per minute to 200 revolutions per minute even though the increment is the same in both cases. This is similar to the situation as it exists 65 in a real-life rowing environment.

Thus, in a sense, the apparatus is self-adjusting in that, when the exerciser pulls harder, to thereby provide a

higher rotational speed of the spool 41, he meets more resistance to counter his greater efforts. This is in contrast to exercising devices which use friction brakes set at a specific level. With the friction brake arrangement, a greater output of effort by the exerciser will not cause a greater resistance to that effort.

It is also contemplated, in accordance with the invention, to provide means 49 for displaying the speed of the flywheel. The means 49 can, for example, comprise a tachometer or other such means as is well known in the art.

Although a particular embodiment has been described, this was for the purpose of illustrating, but not limiting, the invention. Various modifications, which will come readily to the mind of one skilled in the art, are within the scope of the invention as defined in the appended claims.

We claim:

1. A stationary rowing machine exercising device, comprising:

a frame member;

seat means mounted on said frame member and movable therealong;

feet rest means connected to said frame member;

a shaft mounted across said frame at one end thereof; a flywheel mounted on said shaft;

means for rotatably driving said flywheel mounted on said shaft;

said means for rotatably driving comprising:

- (i) a planetary gear system comprising:
  - (a) a rotatable carrier;
  - (b) pinion gears mounted in said carrier or on said carrier;
  - (c) a stationary ring gear;
  - (d) a central gear;

said pinion gears meshing with said central gear and said stationary ring gear;

- (ii) said central gear being mounted on said shaft for rotation therewith;
- (iii) spool means mounted on said carrier for rotation therewith;
- (iv) cable means wound around said spool means for providing rotary motion to said spool means when said cable means is pulled by an exerciser during a rowing stroke;

whereby, said rotary motion of said spool is transferred to said flywheel, through said planetary gear system and said shaft, in a speed increasing mode.

2. A device as defined in claim 1 and further including a spring connected to said carrier;

whereby, said spring is wound up during said rowing stroke; and

- said spring is unwound during a return stroke to rotate said carrier in a direction opposite to the direction of rotation of said carrier during said rowing stroke whereby to rewind said cable means on said spool during said return stroke.
- 3. A device as defined in claim 2 wherein said flywheel comprises a central hub;

a one-way clutch in said central hub;

said shaft being disposed in said one-way clutch;

whereby, during said rowing stroke, said one-way clutch is engaged so that said shaft is connected to said flywheel and said flywheel rotates with said shaft; and

during said return stroke, said clutch is disengaged so that said flywheel is disconnected from said shaft and does not rotate with said shaft during said return stroke.

\* \* \* \* \*



US007766802B2

# (12) United States Patent

Webber et al.

# (10) Patent No.: U

US 7,766,802 B2

45) **Date of Patent:** Aug. 3, 2010

# (54) ROWING EXERCISE MACHINE WITH SELF-ALIGNING PIVOTING USER SUPPORT

(75) Inventors: **Randall T. Webber**, La Jolla, CA (US); **Bruce Hockridge**, San Diego, CA (US);

Jeffrey O. Meredith, Del Mar, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: Hoist Fitness Systems, Inc., San Diego,

CA (US)

(\*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this

patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 97 days.

(21) Appl. No.: 12/105,833

(22) Filed: Apr. 18, 2008

(65) Prior Publication Data

US 2008/0214365 A1 Sep. 4, 2008

## Related U.S. Application Data

- (63) Continuation-in-part of application No. 10/633,805, filed on Aug. 4, 2003, now Pat. No. 7,594,880.
- (51) **Int. Cl. A63B 21/00**

(2006.01)

#### (56) References Cited

#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2,145,940 A	2/1939	Marlowe
4,441,708 A	4/1984	Brentham
4,641,833 A	2/1987	Trethewey

4,743,010 A	5/1988	Geraci
4,822,038 A	4/1989	Maag
4,843,051 A	* 6/1989	Kovacs et al 502/42
4,844,456 A	7/1989	Habing et al.
4,943,051 A	* 7/1990	Haskins et al 482/72
4,944,641 A	7/1990	Habing
4,949,958 A	8/1990	Richey

## (Continued)

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

CA 2075331 2/1994

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. Appl. No. 12/212,090 of Webber et al. filed Sep. 17, 2008.

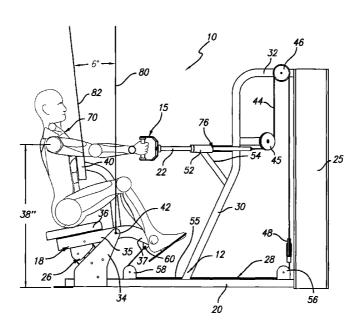
(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Jerome Donnelly (74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Procopio, Cory, Hargreaves & Savitch LLP

# (57) ABSTRACT

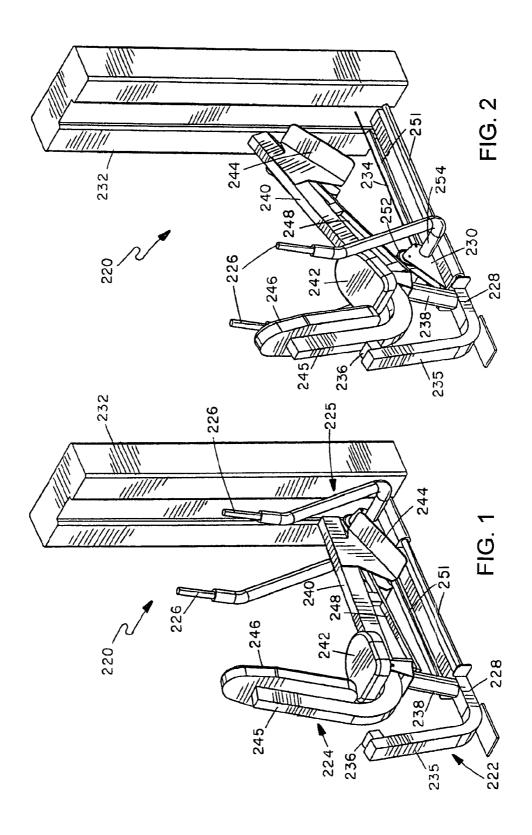
A rowing or mid-row exercise machine has a main frame and a user support frame pivotally mounted relative to the main frame for rotation between start and end positions. The user support frame supports spaced positions on a user's body in the same relative orientation throughout an exercise movement. A user engagement device is movably mounted relative to the frames and has at least one handle gripped by the user in performing exercises. The handle is movable in a predetermined rowing exercise path between a start position spaced in front of a user's chest and an end position closer to the chest. A connecting linkage translates movement of the user engagement device to rotational movement of the user support frame. A load resists movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage.

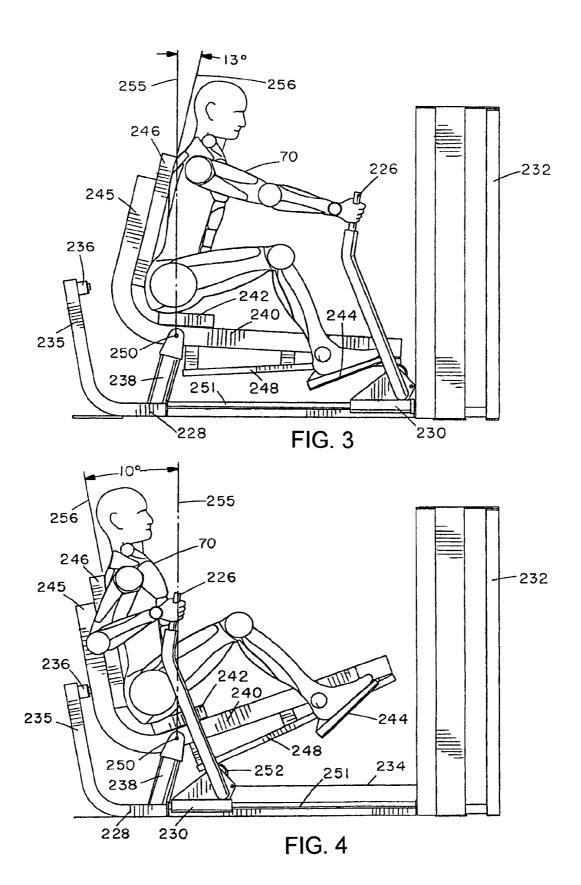
# 56 Claims, 11 Drawing Sheets



# US 7,766,802 B2 Page 2

U.S. PATENT	DOCUMENTS	6,319,178 B1	11/2001	Webber
	*****	6,561,960 B2	5/2003	Webber
, ,	Webber	6,579,213 B1	6/2003	Webber et al.
	Habing et al.	6,605,024 B2		Stearns
	Lopeteguy et al.	6,752,748 B1*	6/2004	Scotti 482/140
	Habing et al.	6,811,522 B1	11/2004	McQuinn
5,342,270 A 8/1994	Jones	6,855,098 B2	2/2005	Reitz et al.
5,352,171 A 10/1994	Lin	6,916,278 B2		Webber
	Rawls et al.	6,971,978 B2	12/2005	
5,356,357 A * 10/1994	Wang et al 482/96	6,988,977 B2		Webber et al.
5,356,358 A 10/1994		7,052,444 B2		Webber
5,401,227 A 3/1995	Webber	7,052,446 B2		Morris et al.
D357,041 S 4/1995	McBride et al.	7,070,545 B2		Lull et al.
5,417,634 A 5/1995	Habing	7,108,641 B2*		Pertegaz-Esteban 482/139
5,478,298 A 12/1995		7,141,003 B2	11/2006	
5,520,599 A 5/1996		7,141,003 B2 7,141,008 B2		Krull et al.
5,527,243 A 6/1996		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Webber
5,527,250 A 6/1996		7,166,066 B2		
	Lui et al.	7,220,221 B2		Mosimann et al.
D372,509 S 8/1996		7,223,213 B2		Golesh
	Huang et al.	7,229,389 B2	6/2007	C
	Wang et al.	7,322,906 B2		Webber
		7,331,911 B2		Webber et al.
	Yu	7,335,140 B2		Webber et al.
5,582,563 A 12/1996		7,361,125 B2		Webber et al.
5,616,105 A 4/1997		7,384,381 B2	6/2008	Webber et al.
	Dalebout et al.	7,468,024 B2	12/2008	Webber et al.
	Huang 482/72	2002/0013199 A1	1/2002	Giannelli et al.
, ,	Gordon	2002/0187879 A1	12/2002	Ball et al.
5,674,161 A 10/1997		2003/0199362 A1	10/2003	Chamberlin
5,681,247 A 10/1997	Webber	2005/0032611 A1	2/2005	Webber et al.
5,683,334 A 11/1997	Webber	2006/0247107 A1	11/2006	Carter
	Eckmann	2006/0276313 A1	12/2006	
5,722,918 A * 3/1998	Lee 482/72	2007/0232462 A1		Webber et al.
5,800,321 A 9/1998	Webber	2007/0293377 A1		Webber et al.
5,810,698 A 9/1998	Hullett et al.	2007/0293378 A1		Webber et al.
5,899,836 A 5/1999	Chen	2008/0058176 A1		Webber et al.
5,916,072 A 6/1999	Webber	2008/0132389 A1		Webber et al.
	Maresh	2008/0152585 A1 2008/0153677 A1		Webber et al.
, ,	Habing	2008/0133077 A1 2008/0182732 A1		Webber et al.
	Habing et al.	2008/0182732 A1 2008/0214367 A1		Webber et al.
	Webber			
	Webber 482/100	2008/0220950 A1		Webber et al.
, ,	Webber	2008/0234110 A1		Webber et al.
	Webber	2008/0242517 A1		Webber et al.
6,135,930 A 10/2000		2008/0248929 A1	10/2008	Webber et al.
, ,	Crawford et al.	$\Gamma \Omega$	HER DIT	BLICATIONS
, ,		O1	TILICI O.	
, ,	Perez et al.	Hoist Prime 8 Brochu	re, Hoist F	itness Systems, 2000.
6,264,588 B1 7/2001				-
6,312,366 B1 11/2001	Prusick	* cited by examine	•	





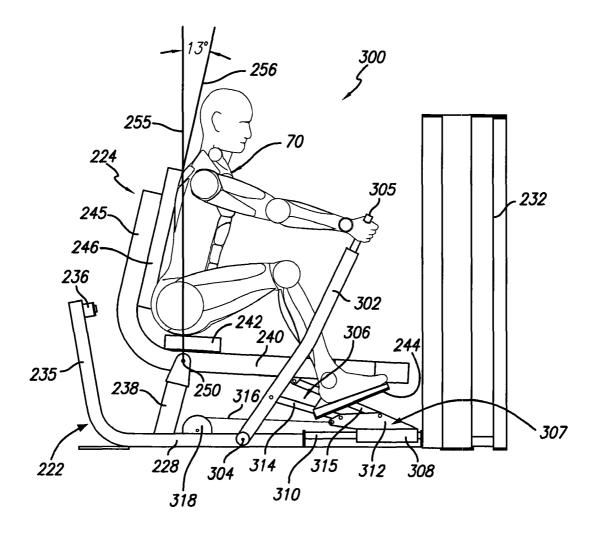


FIG. 5

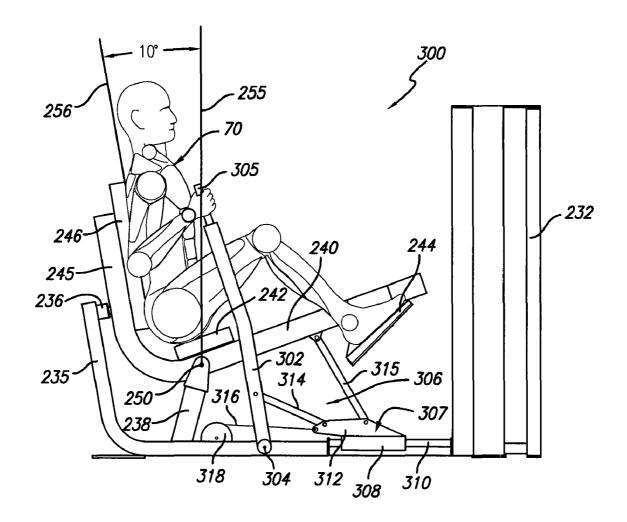


FIG. 6

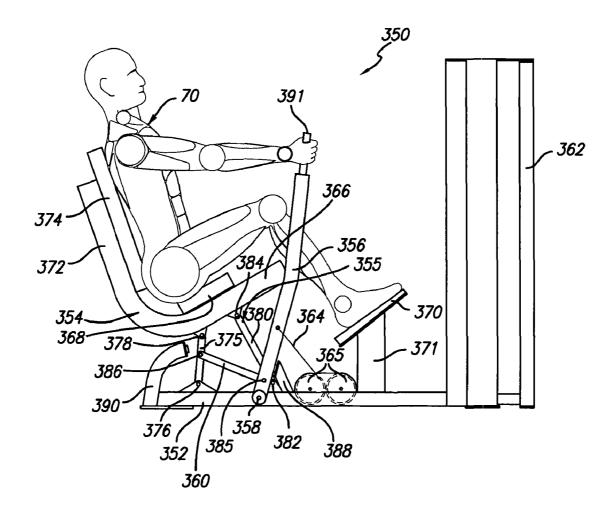


FIG. 7

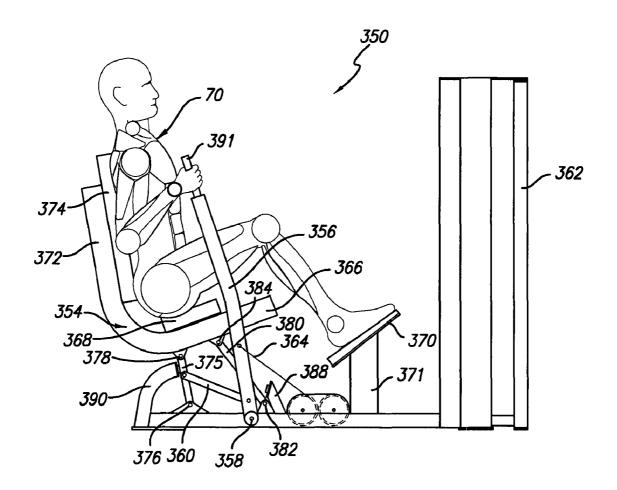


FIG. 8

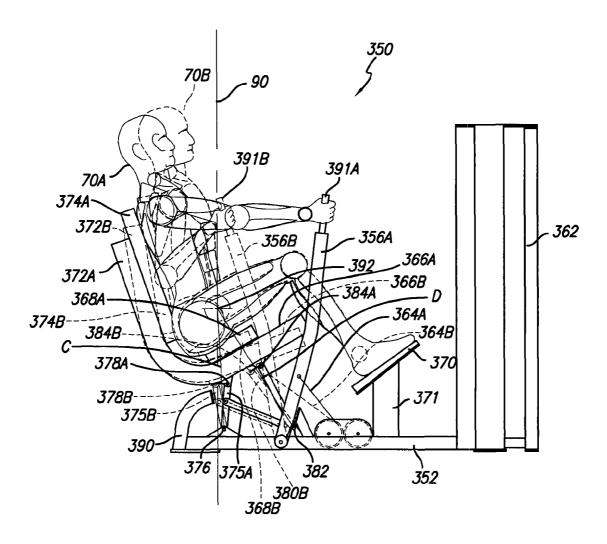


FIG. 9

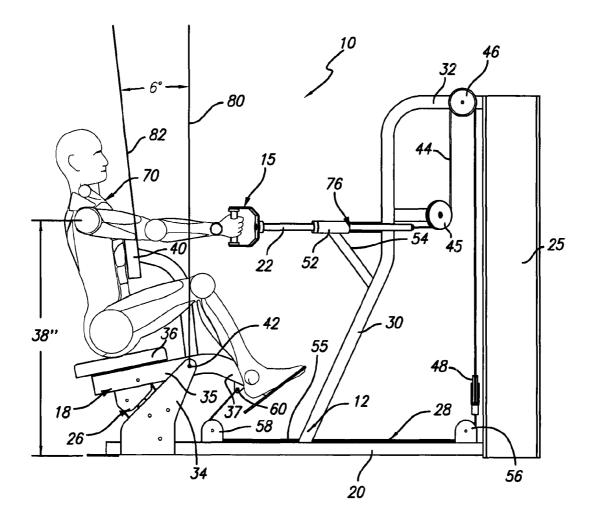


FIG. 10

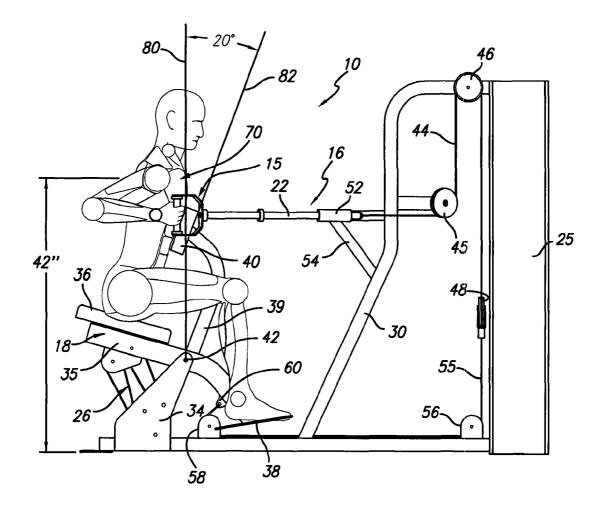
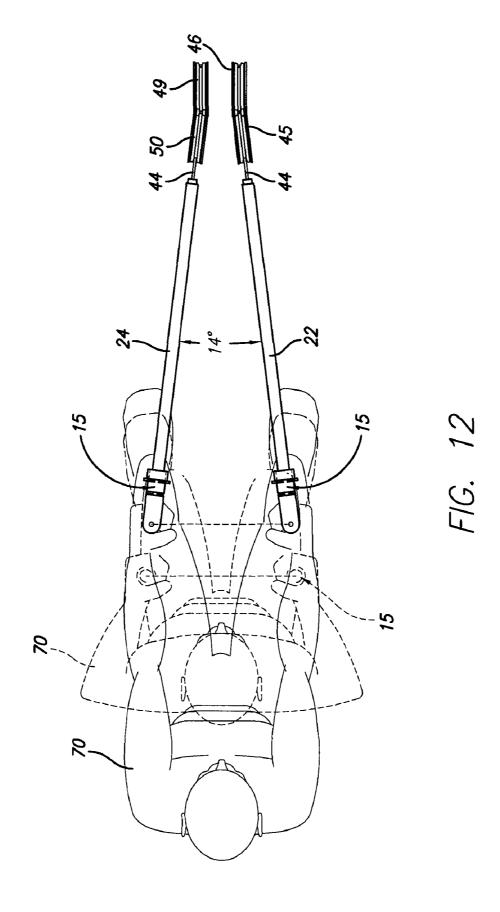
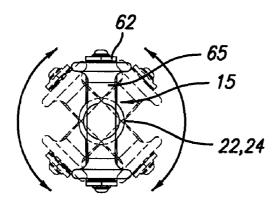


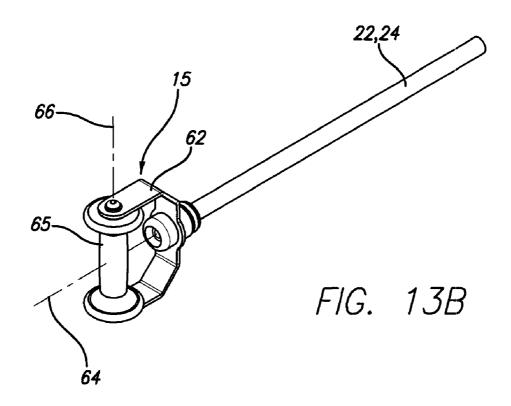
FIG. 11





Aug. 3, 2010

FIG. 13A



## ROWING EXERCISE MACHINE WITH SELF-ALIGNING PIVOTING USER SUPPORT

#### RELATED APPLICATION

The present application is a Continuation-In-Part of copending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 10/633,805 filed on Aug. 4, 2003, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

#### BACKGROUND

#### 1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates generally to exercise machines, and is particularly concerned with a rowing exercise machine 15 with a pivoting user support.

#### 2. Related Art

There are several different types of exercise for exercising back muscles, including mid-row exercises. These exercises can be difficult for many people to perform using free 20 weights, requiring balance and coordination as well as strength to follow the proper movement path. Free rowing exercises often require an exerciser to bend at the waist, which is undesirable. Improper form by the exerciser can make the exercise more difficult, increase stress on the joints, and even 25 lead to possible injury.

Various exercise machines have been developed for performing rowing and other exercises. Some of these have a stationary user support, while others have a pivoting or movable user support, which may or may not be linked to the 30 exercise arm or user engagement means. One problem in most or all prior art designs is the unnatural and exaggerated arcing movement found in pivoting arm exercise machines, which do not accurately simulate the natural body movement found in free weight and/or free bar exercises.

Movable user supports linked to the movement of an exercise arm are extremely common in exercise machines for performing many different exercises, and are generally known as composite motion exercise machines. U.S. Pat. No. 2,252,156 of Bell and U.S. Pat. No. 6,251,047 of Stearns 40 show bicycle and exercise bike designs in which a seat or user support is linked to an exercise arm or crank and pedal system to provide up and down movement to the seat. The most common application of movable user supports is found in rowing and horse riding type exercise machines, which use 45 the weight of the user as the exercise resistance. In U.S. Pat. No. 3,446,503 of Lawton, U.S. Pat. No. 4,743,010 of Geraci, and U.S. Pat. No. 5,342,269 of Huang, a seat and exercise arm are pivotally mounted on the base frame, with the seat linked to the exercise arm for dependent movement. U.S. Pat. No. 50 4,300,760 of Bobroff, U.S. Pat. No. 5,299,997 of Chen, U.S. Pat. No. 5,356,357 of Wang, U.S. Pat. No. 5,453,066 of Richter, U.S. Pat. No. 5,458,553 of Wu, U.S. Pat. No. 5,503,608 of Chang and U.S. Pat. No. 5,507,710 of Chen all show horse riding type exercise machines. They all consist of a user 55 support pivotally attached to a base frame, and one or more exercise arms pivotally connected to the frame and pivotally linked to the user support.

U.S. Pat. No. 6,264,588 of Ellis shows a composite motion movement machine that has a moving exercise arm linked to 60 a movable user support, and a pivoting truck system which is slidably connected to rails mounted both on the main frame and user support. The movable user support and exercise arm are both pivoted at the same point on the base frame, in front of the user support. A belt connects the exercise arm to the 65 truck. When the exercise arm is pushed or pulled, the belt pulls the truck along the rails, forcing the user support to

2

rotate about its pivotal connection to the frame. This design puts all of the user's weight on one side of the pivot, producing a high initial lifting resistance when the user starts the exercise, and also has no means for properly aligning the exercise arm and user support during the exercise movement.

Movable seats linked to exercise arms have also been used in multi-purpose exercise machines, such as U.S. Pat. No. 5,330,405 of Habing, U.S. Pat. No. 5,334,120 of Rasmussen, U.S. Pat. No. 5,669,865 of Gordon, U.S. Pat. No. 5,733,232 of 10 Hsu, and U.S. Pat. No. 6,244,995 of Prsala. In U.S. Pat. No. 5,330,405 of Habing, a lever arm is pivotally connected to the base frame and supports a movable sub-frame including a user support which is also pivotally connected to the stationary base frame. An exercise arm is pivotally mounted on the sub-frame and linked to the lever arm via cables and pulleys, so that movement of the exercise arm pulls the cables lifting the lever arm, and causing the sub-frame to pivot about its connection to the base frame and rise against the weight of the user. U.S. Pat. No. 5,733,232 of Hsu shows another multipurpose exercise machine with a pivoting seat, but in this case the back pad is stationary and only the seat pad is pivoted. Thus, the seat travels in an arcuate path without any secondary stabilization for the user, forcing the user to try to maintain their balance on the seat as it arcs upward. Also, in this design, the pivot point for the seat is located at a spacing behind the user position, so that all of the user's weight opposes the user when starting an exercise from rest. Neither of these machines has any capability for aligning the user and user support with a rigid exercise arm, and thus do not maintain or support the user in the proper position throughout the exercise.

Gordon shows a multi-purpose exercise machine that has a hinged, two-piece user support that folds and unfolds with each exercise repetition, so that the seat and backrest move relative to one another and additional support such a footrest, safety belts and thigh gripping surfaces are required to keep the user properly and safely positioned in the user support. Because most of the combined weight of the user and user support remain on one side of the user support's gravitational centerline, this weight is used as partial exercise resistance.

Current exercise machines with pivoting or movable user supports often do not accurately maintain proper positioning of the user throughout the exercise motion, can result in awkward hand or wrist positions, and often involve exaggerated and unnatural arcing movements, or linear, non-arcing arm movements, rather than the smaller elliptical movement associated with free weight or natural exercise movements. There is no provision for proper positioning of the user relative to the position of the user engaging portion of the exercise arm throughout the entire exercise motion. Often, an awkward starting or finishing position is required, potentially causing strain or injury.

#### **SUMMARY**

Embodiments described herein provide for a rowing exercise machine with a pivoting user support.

A rowing or mid-row exercise machine in one embodiment comprises a floor engaging main frame, a user support frame pivotally associated with the main frame, a user engagement device movably mounted on one of the frames for actuating by a user in order to perform a rowing exercise, and a connecting linkage which links movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support. A load provides resistance to movement of the user support frame, user engagement device and/or connecting linkage. The connecting linkage, user support pivot, and user engagement device

mount are arranged so that movement of the user engagement device results in self-aligning movement of the user support. In one embodiment, the user engagement device has at least one exercise arm which is at least partially rigid and has a handle gripped by a user when performing a rowing exercise, 5 the handle moving in a predetermined exercise path from a start position spaced in front of the user's chest to an end position drawn in closer to the user.

The user support frame in an exemplary embodiment has both a primary user support, such as a seat pad or back pad, 10 and a secondary user support, such as a back pad, shoulder pad, thigh hold-down pads, chest pad, or the like. It may also have a supplementary stabilization means such as a foot rest, which may be mounted on, and travel with, the user support frame. Alternatively, a foot rest may be mounted on the main frame. In either case, the foot rest provides additional stabilization to the user, helping them to maintain a proper exercise position and providing additional comfort and support. The use of multiple support pads on the user support frame helps to position the exerciser properly and safely. These supports 20 are in fixed alignment to each other and travel together, keeping the user in the same braced position throughout the entire exercise range of motion. This allows the user to focus on the exercise rather than worrying about their positioning on a moving platform or seat.

The exercise arm or user engagement device is movably mounted on the main frame, the user support frame, or the connecting linkage. The connecting linkage translates movement of the exercise arm to movement of the user support, and is movably engaged with at least two of the main frame, exercise arm, and user support. In one embodiment, the user engagement device is movably mounted on the main frame and associated with the connecting linkage. The user support and exercise arm may both be movably mounted on the main frame, with the connecting linkage connected between them. The exercise arm may be mounted for linear movement or may be pivotally mounted for rotational movement.

The user support frame may be pivotally mounted on the base of the main frame so that it is relatively low to the ground and readily accessible to the user in entering and exiting the machine, via a single pivot or a multiple pivot assembly. In one embodiment, the user engagement device is also movably mounted on the base of the main frame. In other embodiments, the user engagement device is movably mounted relative to an upright portion of the main frame. The user engagement device may comprise completely rigid or partially rigid exercise arms with handles for gripping by the user which are movable between a start position spaced forwardly from the user's chest and an end position which is drawn in just in front of the user's chest. The user's hands may be at a slightly lower elevation relative to the shoulders in the end position than in the start position. The movement mimics the slight, naturally arcing movement of the upper body when rowing without any bending at the waist, which is undesirable and can occur with a free rowing exercise.

A pivot assembly which pivotally supports the user support frame may be located beneath the frame. The connecting linkage may be rigid, flexible, or partially flexible, and may be adjustable in length or position. The user engagement device or exercise arm may have one or two handles. If handles are provided, they may be rigid or flexible, fixed or self-aligning, and may provide two dimensional or three dimensional hand movement.

The handles and associated exercise arms may be movable 65 independently or in unison. In one embodiment, the user engagement device and connecting linkage are both movably

4

associated with the main frame. The user engagement device may be a bi-directional exercise arm.

In some embodiments, the end position of the user support frame is inclined rearward relative to the start position, while in others the end position is inclined forward relative to the start position. In one embodiment, the primary support is a seat pad which may be horizontal or inclined in the start position. The seat pad is rearwardly inclined in an exercise start position in one embodiment, and is moved through a horizontal orientation to a different inclined position in the exercise end position. In another embodiment, the seat pad is forwardly inclined in the start position and rearwardly reclined in the end position. In another embodiment, the seat pad does not travel through a horizontal orientation but is rearwardly reclined in the start position and ends in a position which is rotated forward relative to the start position but still rearwardly reclined. The secondary support may comprise an upright support pad for the user's back or chest. Because the user support moves in conjunction with the exercise arm or user engagement device, the arcuate path of the exercise arm relative to the user support is reduced. The result is a more natural feeling exercise movement that more closely replicates the movement found in the corresponding free weight

The pivot mounting of the user support defines a vertical gravitational center line of the pivotal movement, and in one embodiment portions of the combined weight of the user and user support frame are positioned on both sides of the vertical gravitational center line in at least one of the start and end positions of the exercise. In one embodiment, a portion of the combined weight of the user and user support is positioned on the movement side (i.e. the side the user support is pivoting towards) of the gravitational center line in the start position. This reduces the initial lifting resistance. By finishing the exercise with a portion of the combined user and user support weight on the trailing side of the center line in the movement direction, resistance "drop-off" at the end of an exercise is reduced. This distribution reduces the effect of the user's body weight on the resistance felt during the exercise. This is the opposite of most exercise devices that have moving user supports, which tend to rely on the weight of the user for resistance. Whether it is the starting or the finishing position, most prior art pivoting user supports place the majority of the user's weight on one or the other side of the gravitational center line of the pivoting movement, resulting in either a high initial lifting resistance, or else a resistance "drop off" at the end of the exercise.

The exercise resistance or load may comprise a weight stack, weight plates mounted on pegs, or other types of resistance such as hydraulic, pneumatic, electromagnetic, or elastic bands, and may be associated with any of the moving parts, i.e. the user support frame, exercise arm, or connecting linkage.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The details of the present invention, both as to its structure and operation, may be gleaned in part by study of the accompanying drawings, in which like reference numerals refer to like parts, and in which:

FIG. 1 is a rear perspective view of a rowing or mid-row exercise machine according to one embodiment, with the machine illustrated in a start position adopted at the beginning of an exercise movement;

FIG. 2 is a rear perspective view similar to FIG. 1, illustrating the machine in an exercise end position;

FIG. 3 is a side elevation view of the machine of FIGS. 1 and 2, with a user seated on the machine in the start position adopted at the beginning of the exercise;

FIG. 4 is a side elevation view similar to FIG. 3, illustrating the user and machine in the end position of the exercise;

FIG. 5 is a side elevation view of a mid-row exercise machine according to another embodiment, with a user seated on the machine in the start position adopted at the beginning of the exercise;

FIG. 6 is a side elevation view of the mid-row exercise 10 machine of FIG. 5 with the user and machine in the end position of the exercise;

FIG. 7 is a side elevation view of a mid-row exercise machine according to another embodiment, with a user seated on the machine in the start position adopted at the beginning 15 of the exercise;

FIG. 8 is a side elevation view of the mid-row exercise machine of FIG. 7 with the user and machine in the end position of the exercise;

FIG. 9 is an overlapping side elevation view illustrating the 20 start and end positions of FIGS. 7 and 8 superimposed;

FIG. 10 is a side elevation view of another embodiment of a mid-row exercise machine in an exercise start position with a user seated on the machine:

FIG. 11 is a side elevation view similar to FIG. 10 but 25 illustrating the end position of the exercise;

FIG. 12 is a top plan view of the user and the user engaging handle part of the machine of FIGS. 10 and 11 with the start and end position of the user and user engaging handles shown superimposed;

FIG. 13A is an end elevation view of one of the handles of the machine of FIGS. 10 to 12 illustrating adjustment of the hand grip orientation; and

FIG. 13B is a perspective view of a handle arm of the machine of FIGS. 10 to 12, illustrating the perpendicular 35 pivot axes of the articulating handle.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Certain embodiments as disclosed herein provide for a 40 rowing exercise machine having a stationary main frame as well as an exercise arm or user engagement device and user support frame which travel in a dependent relationship. The user engagement device has one or more handles which are gripped by the user and arm portions movably linking the 45 handles to one of the user support, main frame or a connecting linkage which translates movement of the handles into movement of the user support.

After reading this description it will become apparent to one skilled in the art how to implement the invention in 50 various alternative embodiments and alternative applications. However, although various embodiments of the present invention will be described herein, it is understood that these embodiments are presented by way of example only, and not limitation

FIGS. 1 to 4 illustrate a mid row exercise machine 220 according to one embodiment, for performing a rowing exercise. FIG. 1 illustrates the machine in a start position while FIG. 2 illustrates the finish position, with FIGS. 3 and 4 illustrating the same positions with a user 70 performing the 60 exercise

The exercise machine 220 comprises a main frame 222 and a user support 224 pivotally mounted on the frame. A U-shaped user engagement device or exercise arm 225 with handles 226 at its free, upper ends is slidably mounted on the 65 base 228 of the frame 222 via linear slide or carriage 230. The linear slide 230 is linked to an exercise resistance, in this case

6

a weight stack in housing 232, via a cable and pulley linkage, most of which is concealed within the weight stack housing, with the cable 234 of the linkage connected to the slide 230 as indicated in FIG. 2. The linear slide or sliding wedge 230 is also linked to the underside of the user support 224, as described in more detail below, and forms part of a connecting linkage which translates movement of the exercise arm into movement of the user support. The sliding wedge linkage between the exercise arm and user support is similar to that described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,916,278, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The main frame also has a slightly rearward inclined upright strut 235 at the rear end of base 222, which has a stop pad 236 at its upper end forming a rest for the user support in the exercise end position of FIGS. 2 and 4, and a pivot mounting post 238 extending upwardly from the base at a position spaced forward from upright strut 235. The user support 224 is generally L-shaped, and has a base 240 on which a seat pad 242 is mounted, with a pair of foot rests or foot plates 244 secured adjacent the forward end of base 240, and an upright 245 supporting back pad 246. A guide bar or track 248 is mounted on the underside of the base 240 of the user support so as to extend at an upwardly inclined angle from the rear end to the forward end, as best illustrated in FIGS. 3 and 4. The user support is pivoted to the pivot mount 238 via a pivot 250 located beneath the seat pad 242.

The linear slide or wedge 230 has a lower sleeve portion which is slidably engaged on a pair of parallel, linear guide bars 251 on the base 228 of the frame, and an upper wedge shaped portion comprising spaced parallel plates with a wheel 252 rotatably mounted between the plates at its upper end for rolling engagement on the guide bar or track 248 on the underside of the user support base. The central portion 254 of the U-shaped exercise arm is rigidly mounted on the slide or wedge 230. Rearward linear motion of the exercise arm is translated into rearward rotational movement of the user support with this arrangement.

FIGS. 3 and 4 illustrate a user 70 performing a rowing type of exercise, also known as a mid row exercise, on the machine 220. In FIGS. 3 and 4, dotted line 255 is the gravitational centerline of the user support pivot 250, while dotted line 256 represents the orientation of the user support back rest, or the back of the user when seated on the support. To perform the exercise, the user sits on the seat with the user support in the position illustrated in FIG. 3, and places their feet on the foot support plates 244 while gripping handles 226 with their arms straight out in front. The user support is initially positioned in a back supported, forwardly inclined position, so that the user's body is initially at a forward lean of around 13 degrees off vertical. The user's arms extend straight forwards with their hands slightly below shoulder level, which is similar to the starting position for a free rowing exercise.

The user then pulls handles 226 towards their body in a rowing action, simultaneously pulling the slide or wedge 230 along the rails 251. This wedges the wheel 252 along the angled user support guide bar 248, rotating the user support rearward about pivot 250, and moving the user from a slightly forwardly inclined position to a reclined position, ending with their arms pulled back and their hands at a slightly lower elevation, relative to their shoulders, than the starting position, as seen in FIG. 4. This follows a natural rearward arcing rowing motion. The end position of the user in FIG. 4 is similar to the end position for a free rowing. This exercise machine mimics the slight, naturally arcing movement of the upper body when rowing a boat or exercising on a rowing

machine, without allowing the user to bend at the waist, which is undesirable and can occur with a free rowing exercise

In the exercise machine of this embodiment, the user support pivot 250 is positioned directly under the exerciser. The 5 gravitational centerline 255 runs very close to the centerline of the user's hip, allowing a balanced portion of the user and user support to be positioned on each side of the gravitational centerline in both the start and finish position. Because the user support seat 242 rises upward as it rotates and the exercise arm travels in a straight line, the positioning of the exerciser's hands, relative to their shoulders, is slightly higher in the starting position than the finish position. This involves more of the back muscles and combines multiple lat pull movements in one exercise, which is not possible with a 15 conventional rowing machine exercise using a cable.

FIGS. **5** and **6** illustrate a modified rowing or mid-row exercise machine **300** according to another embodiment, in which the exercise arm and connecting linkage are different from the previous embodiment but the user support moves in a similar manner from a slight forward inclination in the start position to a rearward inclination in the end position. Some parts of the machine in FIGS. **5** and **6** are identical to parts in the previous embodiment, and like reference numbers are used for like parts as appropriate.

As in the previous embodiment, a generally L-shaped user support frame 224 is pivotally mounted on main frame 222 via a pivot at the upper end of pivot mount 238 so as to rotate about pivot axis 250. Unlike the previous embodiment, a user engagement device or exercise arm 302, which may comprise 30 separate arms on each side of the main frame, or a U-shaped exercise arm as in the previous embodiment, is pivoted to the base 228 of the main frame for rotation about pivot axis 304. The user engageable exercise arm 302 has hand grips 305 at its upper ends.

The connecting linkage 306 in this embodiment is a multiple part linkage which includes a sliding link or carriage 307 which is slidably engaged on the base of the main frame, and pivoted links 314, 315 extending between the carriage and the exercise arm, and between the carriage and the user support 40 frame, respectively. The sliding link or carriage 307 has a sleeve 308 slidably engaging a pair of parallel rails or guide bars 310 on the base of the frame, which are similar to the guide rails 251 of the previous embodiment but do not extend as far back as the rails 251 due to the reduced distance of 45 sliding movement required in this embodiment. The carriage 307 further comprises a connecting plate or plates 312 mounted on top of sliding sleeve 308. The first pivoted link 314 is pivoted to plate 312 at one end and to the exercise arm 302 at the opposite end, and a second pivoted link 315 is 50 pivoted to the plate at one end and pivoted to the base 240 of the user support frame at the opposite end. The pivot connections of the two links 314 and 315 to sliding link connecting plate 312 are spaced from one another. The connecting plate 312 is also connected to the load in weight stack 232 via cable 55 316 which extends from a rear end of connecting plate 312, round a pulley 318 on the base of the frame, and then forward to the weight stack housing where it is linked in a conventional manner to a selected number of the weights in the weight stack housing.

The user 70 starts the exercise in a position similar to the start position of the previous embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 5, with the seat pad 242 at a slight downward inclination, the back pad 246 inclined forward at an angle of around 13 degrees, and the user's arms extending forward and gripping 65 the handles 305 at the upper ends of exercise arms 302, which also start in a forwardly pivoted orientation but at a greater

8

angle of inclination than the back pad or back rest 246. In this position, the two pivoted links 314, 315 are both pivoted downwards and almost parallel to one another, while the sliding link 308 is at the forward end of the rails 310.

In order to perform a rowing exercise, the user pulls handles 305 towards their body in a rowing action, simultaneously rotating exercise arms 302 rearward about the pivot 304. Rearward rotation of arms 302 pulls pivoted link 314 rearward and upward at its end which is secured to the exercise arm, and simultaneously pulls the sliding carriage rearward along rail 310. Movement of the carriage also moves the lower end of pivoted link 315 rearward, simultaneously rotating the link 315 forward and upward at its upper end which is secured to the base of the user support. This tilts the user support upward at its forward end, moving the user and user support from a slightly forwardly inclined position to a reclined position. The user ends the exercise with their arms pulled back and their hands at a slightly lower elevation relative to their shoulders than the starting position, as seen in FIG. 6. This follows a natural rearward arcing rowing motion. The end position of the user in FIG. 6 is similar or identical to the end position of FIG. 4 of the previous embodiment, with the back rest tilted rearward from the vertical at an angle of around 10 degrees. Again, this exercise machine mimics the slight, naturally arcing movement of the upper body when rowing a boat or exercising on a rowing machine, without allowing the user to bend at the waist, which is undesirable and can occur with a free rowing exercise.

In the exercise machine of this embodiment, as in the previous embodiment, the user support pivot 250 is positioned directly under the exerciser. The gravitational centerline 255 runs very close to the centerline of the user's hip, allowing a balanced portion of the user and user support to be positioned on each side of the gravitational centerline in both the start and finish position. Because the user support seat 242 rises upward as it rotates and the exercise arm rotates about a pivot axis at its lower end, the positioning of the exerciser's hands, relative to their shoulders, is slightly higher in the starting position than the finish position. This involves more of the back muscles and combines multiple lat pull movements in one exercise, which is not possible with a conventional rowing machine exercise using a cable.

FIGS. 7 to 9 illustrate a rowing or mid-row exercise machine 350 according to a third embodiment, comprising a main frame having a base 352, a user support frame 354 pivotally mounted on the main frame base 352 via a four bar pivot system 355, and a user engagement device or exercise arm 356 pivotally mounted on the main frame base 352 for rotation about pivot axis 358. Movement of the user engagement device 356 is translated into movement of the user support via a connecting linkage which in this case comprises a connecting link 360 pivoted between the user engagement device or exercise arm 356 and one of the links of the four bar pivot system 354, as explained in more detail below. User engagement device or exercise arm 356 is linked to a user selected amount of weight in a weight stack (not illustrated) in weight stack housing 362 at the forward end of the main frame, via a load bearing cable 364 extending from arm 356 between dual pulleys 365 at the base of the frame and then 60 forward to the weight stack.

The user support frame 354 is similar to the previous embodiments except that the base 366 does not extend as far forward from seat pad 368 and has no foot plate or plates secured at its forward end. Instead, footrests 370 which support the user's feet are mounted on the upper end of a vertical post 371 on the base 352 of the main frame in front of the user support, and remain stationary throughout the exercise move-

ment. As in the previous embodiments, the user support frame has a rear portion 372 which extends generally upwardly from the base, and on which a back rest or back pad 374 is mounted to support the user's back.

The four bar pivot system 355 which pivotally mounts the user support frame on the base of the main frame has first and second spaced bars or pivot links 375, 380 each pivoted between the base 352 of the main frame and the base 366 of the user support. The first bar or pivot link 375 is pivoted at one end to the base 352 for rotation about first pivot axis 376 and at the other end to the underside of the base 366 of the user support for rotation about second pivot axis 378. A second bar or pivot link 380 is pivoted at one end to the base 352 of the main frame at a location spaced forward of pivot axis 378, for rotation about third pivot axis 382. The upper end of pivot link 15 380 is pivoted to the underside of the user support base for rotation about fourth pivot axis 384 which is spaced forward from the second pivot axis 378.

The connecting link 360 is pivoted at its forward end to the exercise arm 356, for rotation about pivot axis 385 which is 20 close to the lower end of arm 356, and is pivoted at its rear end to the first or rear pivot link 375 of the four bar pivot system, for rotation about pivot axis 386. A first end stop at the upper end of post 388 on the main frame engages the exercise arm 356 in the start position of an exercise, as seen in FIG. 7. A 25 second end stop at the end of post 390 at the rear end of the main frame base 352 engages the rear pivot link 375 of the four bar user support pivot system in the end position of an exercise, as seen in FIG. 8.

The user engagement device **356** may comprise separate, 30 independently movable exercise arms or a U-shaped exercise arm as in the first embodiment which is pivoted to the main frame at the base of the U-shape for rotation about pivot axis **358**. Handles or grips **391** are provided at the upper end of each exercise arm or upright exercise arm portion.

As noted above, FIG. 7 illustrates a user seated on the machine 350 in the start position for a mid-row exercise, while FIG. 8 illustrates the user and machine in the end position of the exercise. In order to perform a mid-row exercise, the user sits on user support seat 368 with their back 40 against back pad 374, and reaches forward to grab the handles 391 of the user engagement device or exercise arms 356. This is the position illustrated in FIG. 7. The user then pulls the handles 391 inward towards their chest, stopping when the handles reach the end position of FIG. 8, just in front of their 45 chest and slightly below shoulder level.

In moving from the start position of FIG. 7 to the end position of FIG. 8, the seat pad 364 and back pad 374 of the user support move from the rearwardly reclined position illustrated in FIG. 7, pivoting forwardly via the four-bar pivot 50 linkage to a less rearwardly reclined position as illustrated in FIG. 8. The four-bar pivot linkage defines a theoretical pivot of the pivoting movement, as illustrated in FIG. 9. In FIG. 9, the start and end positions of the exercise movement are superimposed in order to illustrate the theoretical pivot loca- 55 tion 392 and how different parts of the machine are oriented in the finish position relative to the start position. The parts which move are designated with an A in the start position and a B in the finish position. The two pivots 376 and 382 of the links 375 and 380 to the main frame are fixed, while the pivots 60 378 and 384 travel from positions 378A and 384A to positions 378B and 384B, respectively. FIG. 9 illustrates the plotting of the theoretical pivot point 392 for the user support. The theoretical pivot point 392 is at the point of intersection of the centerlines C, D of the arcing movement for each link 65 375, 380 of the user support four-bar pivot system. From this point we can determine the gravitational centerline 90 of the

10

pivoting movement, which is shown as a dotted vertical line. The first centerline C extends from pivot 376 through the center of a line connecting the start and end position 378A, 378B of pivot 378, and the second centerline D extends from fixed pivot 382 through the center of a line connecting the start and end positions 384A, 384B of pivot 384. It can be seen from this drawing that it would be difficult and more expensive to duplicate the pivoting movement of the user support provided by four-bar pivot linkage 355 with a single pivot mount, since this would require an actual pivot at point 392.

During the exercise motion, the angle of the user support seat 368 goes from more rearwardly reclined to less rearwardly reclined, because movement in the four-bar pivot system dips the front end of the user support seat 368 as it raises the rear end. It also shifts the pad rearward slightly (compare pad positions 368A and 368B in FIG. 9). This combined action moves slightly more of the user onto the resistance side of the gravitational centerline, since the user's body is rotated slightly forward.

In the exercise machine of this embodiment, the theoretical pivot axis 392 of the pivotal movement is just forward of the user's hip, while the four-bar pivot system 355 is positioned under the exerciser. The gravitational centerline 90 of the pivotal movement runs forward of the centerline of the user's hip, and a balanced portion of the user and user support is positioned on each side of the gravitational centerline in both the start and end position. In this embodiment, the positioning of the exerciser's hands relative to their shoulders is slightly higher in the starting position than the finish position. This involves more of the back muscles and combines multiple lat pull movements in one exercise, which is not possible with a conventional rowing machine exercise using a cable.

FIGS. 10 to 12 illustrate a rowing or mid-row exercise machine 10 according to another embodiment with a user 70 positioned on the machine to perform a mid-row exercise, while FIGS. 13A and 13B illustrate one of the articulating handles 15 of the user engagement device 16 of this machine. Machine 10 has a main frame 12, a user support frame 18 pivotally mounted on the main frame, a user engagement device 16 having independent exercise arms 22, 24, and an exercise resistance comprising a weight stack in housing 25 linked to the user support frame 18 via cable and pulley assembly 26, only part of which is visible in the drawings. The user engagement device 16 is linked to the user support frame 45 by a connecting linkage 28 so that pulling on the handles 15 in a rowing exercise is translated into movement of the user support frame, as described in more detail below.

Main frame 12 has a horizontal base 20, an upwardly extending portion 30 with a generally horizontal section 32 at its upper end, and a pair of pivot mounting plates 34 extending upwardly from the frame adjacent its rear end. The user support frame 18 has a base 35 with a user support seat or pad 36 at its rear end and a downwardly extending forward end portion 37 having a foot plate or plates 38 secured at its lower end. An upright member 39 extends upwardly from the base 35 at a location in front of the user support seat 36, and has a rearwardly curved upper portion with a chest pad 40 mounted at its end for engaging the chest of a user 70 during the exercise. The pivot mounting plates support pulleys (not visible) of the load engaging cable and pulley assembly 26 which is located beneath the user support seat 36, and are pivotally connected to the base 35 of the user support frame at a location spaced forward from the seat and under post 39, to allow rotation of the user support frame about pivot axis 42.

The user engagement device 16 in this embodiment is partly rigid and partly flexible, and comprises right and left rigid exercise arms or arm portions 22, 24 (see FIG. 12) each

having an articulated handle 15 secured at one end for engagement by a user's hands, and a flexible elongate member such as a cable 44 which runs around a series of pulleys and extends between arms 22, 24. The cable 44 has a first end anchored to the end of arm 22 and runs around a first out- 5 wardly angled pulley 45 on the upwardly extending portion 30 of the main frame, around a pulley 46 on the upper horizontal section 32 of portion 30, and then downwardly around a floating pulley 48. The cable 44 then runs upwardly around a fixed pulley 49 (see FIG. 12) mounted on upper horizontal section 32 of the main frame behind pulley 46, then back down and around a second outwardly angled pulley 50 on the upwardly extending portion 30 of the main frame (see FIG. 12) before anchoring to the end of arm 24. Each of the rigid exercise arms 22, 24 extends through a respective guide tube 15 52, only one of which is visible in FIGS. 10 and 11. Guide tubes 52 are supported on the upright portion 30 of the main frame by angled support struts 54, and are each angled in alignment with the respective outwardly angled pulley 45, 50 to define diverging linear paths for the two arms 22, 24, as best 20 seen in FIG. 12. The exercise arms diverge from one another at an angle of around 14 degrees in this embodiment, as shown in FIG. 12.

The connecting linkage 28 comprises a cable and pulley assembly having a cable 55 extending from the housing of 25 floating pulley 48 around a first pulley 56 mounted on the base 20 of the main frame adjacent the weight stack housing and a second pulley 58 mounted on the base 20 at a location spaced from the first pulley and beneath the user support frame. Cable 55 is then anchored to a cable anchor 60 on the lower side of the user support base 35, at a location on the downwardly extending, forward end portion of base 35. Thus, in this embodiment, the connecting linkage comprises a flexible link extending from the user engagement device around pulleys on the main frame before connecting to a forward end 35 portion of the base of the user support frame.

The articulating handles 15 allow the user to change their hand position as needed throughout the exercise. As best illustrated in FIGS. 13A and 13B, each handle 15 comprises a generally C-shaped bracket 62 pivotally connected at its 40 center to the end of the respective exercise arm 22, 24 for rotation about a first pivot axis 64 aligned with the longitudinal axis of the respective exercise arm. A hand grip 65 is pivotally mounted between the ends of the C-bracket 62 for rotation about its axis 66. These handles allow for multiple 45 grip positions as indicated by the arrows and dotted line positions in FIG. 13A, and permit the user to self-align their wrist to the movement pattern.

In order to perform the exercise, the user 70 first sits on the user support pad 36 in the position of FIG. 10 and the solid 50 line position of FIG. 12, placing their feet on the footplate 38 and their chest against the chest pad 40, then grabs the grips 65 of handles 15 with their arms straight in front of their body, slightly bent, and their hands relatively close together, as indicated in solid lines in FIG. 12. At the start of the exercise, 55 the user is in a slightly reclined orientation at an angle of around 6 degrees to the gravitational centerline 80 extending through user support pivot 42, as indicated in FIG. 10, where the second dotted line 82 indicates the orientation of the chest pad 40 or front of the user's chest at the start of the exercise. 60

From the position illustrated in FIG. 10, the user pulls the handles or hand grips 15 rearward towards their chest, so that the exercise arms 22, 24 travel rearward and outward on divergent linear paths, as indicated by the dotted line end position in FIG. 12. Rearward movement of the exercise arms 65 pulls the ends of cable 44, lifting the floating pulley 48 and also pulling the connecting linkage cable 55 to rotate the user

12

support downwardly at its forward end and upwardly at its rear end against the exercise resistance, with the chest pad and user upper body ending up in a forward lean of around 20 degrees from the vertical, as seen in FIG. 11. The user support seat pad 36 is inclined downward in the end position of the exercise. The user's arms finish in a bent position with their hands positioned adjacent opposite sides of their chest, slightly below and forward of their shoulders. The user's hands therefore diverge during the exercise movement, starting at a spacing of about 12 inches and ending at a wider spacing of around 13 inches in the illustrated embodiment.

The user is in three different positions throughout the exercise, starting in a recline or decline position, traveling through a straight, upright position, and ending in a forward incline position. At the same time, there is a change in elevation of the user's shoulders between the start and finish position, which amounts to about a four inch change. These factors together provide an enhanced workout by involving a greater number of muscles than a mid-row exercise performed in only one position.

The gravitational centerline or vertical centerline 80 of the user support pivot runs through the exerciser's thigh, just behind the knee in the start position and ending at mid thigh in the end position of the mid-row exercise. There is a balanced distribution of weight on each side of the centerline 80of the pivotal movement both at the start and end position, minimizing the effect that the weight of the exerciser and user support has on the exercise resistance. The amount of weight positioned on each side of centerline 80 varies only slightly from the start to the finish position. The combined weight of the user and user support has little effect on the amount of starting resistance because a substantially equal amount of weight is balanced rearward of the user support pivot. By the same token, because only a small portion of the user passes through the gravitational centerline during the exercise, there is no appreciable drop-off in resistance felt by the user.

In each of the above embodiments, the connecting linkage translates movement of the user engagement device to the user support. The connecting linkage may be movably engaged with at least two of the main frame, user engagement device, and user support. In some embodiments, such as the embodiments of FIGS. 5 and 6 and 10 to 12, the connecting linkage is associated with all three of the user engagement device, user support, and main frame. The connecting linkage may have multiple parts or comprise a single rigid link, articulated links, completely flexible links, a sliding wedge link or rolling carriage, and the like, and the connecting linkage may be made adjustable.

The user engagement device may have linked or separate exercise arms moveable in straight, parallel paths or in slightly diverging straight paths during an exercise, or may be a pivotally mounted exercise arm. The exercise arm or arms may be movably mounted on the main frame, connecting linkage, or user support frame, and may be rigid or partially flexible. The handles may be rigid or flexible, and may provide for two-dimensional or three-dimensional hand movement.

In each of the above embodiments, movement of the user support is linked to movement of the exercise arm or user engagement device, and the gravitational centerline of the user support's pivotal movement is positioned so that the combined weight of the user support and user is distributed on both sides of the gravitational centerline in at least one of the exercise start and end positions. Because of this arrangement, the user support provides a counter-balancing effect on the exercise arm as it moves and its weight is re-distributed. This balanced weight distribution positions a portion of the user

and user support on each side of the gravitational centerline in either the start or end position, or both the start and end position. As the exercise arm is moved, a portion of this combined weight passes through the gravitational centerline redistributing the weight. This re-distribution is gradual and 5 continuous throughout the exercise motion and is not noticed by the user.

In the exercise machines described above, operation of the user engagement device causes a rocking movement of the user support. Due to the position of the user support pivot or 10 the theoretical pivot, the movement of the user and user support has only a small effect on the exercise resistance felt by the user, and there is no high resistance to be overcome in starting the exercise, or large resistance drop-off. The rocking movement of the user support recruits core stabilizing muscles and also makes the exercise enjoyable to perform. Repetitious exercise movement can be tedious and boring. By adding motion to the user support, without any large increase or change in resistance felt during the exercise, performing the exercise is more enjoyable and the user's interest in their 20 workout increases. This is a benefit both to the individual exerciser, who may be motivated to exercise more regularly, and the fitness facility, where retention of members is a primary objective.

It should be understood that all the different elements used in the various embodiments may be mixed and interchanged with one another, and different types and forms of components could be used without affecting the scope of the invention. Cables could be replaced with belts, ropes, chains, or the like, and pulleys could be replaced with sprockets. The seat and/or back pad could be fixed or made adjustable. Various different types of user engaging pads can be used. The exercise arm or user engagement device could be unidirectional or bi-directional, and may be in one piece (dependent) or two pieces for independent arm movement. The exercise arm may 35 be mounted on the user support, main frame, or connecting linkage, and the exercise arm movement may be rotational or linear.

The user support and user engagement device could be designed to travel in the same or opposite directions. The user 40 support pivot mount may have a single pivot or multiple pivots, and in the latter case the user support pivots about a theoretical pivot mount of the combined pivotal motion. Any of the various embodiments could have the resistance associated with any of the moving parts (user support, user 45 engagement device, or connecting linkage). The exercise resistance may be a weight stack linked to part of the apparatus by a cable and pulley arrangement, or may be weight plates. Any other type of resistance known in the art may alternatively be used, such as hydraulic, pneumatic, electromagnetic, or elastic bands, in place of the weight stack or weight plates.

Although the exercise machine described above is a single, stand-alone exercise station, it may be incorporated as one of the exercise stations in a multi-station exercise machine. The 55 multiple user supports provide secure and safe positioning, placing the user in the proper exercise alignment from start to finish, without any adjustment required by the user. The seat and upper body support (chest pad or back pad) travel together in fixed alignment to keep the user in the same 60 position throughout the exercise motion so that the user does not have to worry about balancing on a moving platform or pad. Additional supports or foot plates which also travel with the user support provide a rest for the user's feet during travel of the user support, for added stability.

In each case, the user support is positioned relatively low to the ground in the start and end position, making the machines 14

quicker, easier, and safer to enter and exit. The user does not have to climb up or down in order to get into, or out of, the exercise position. The low profile also makes the machines more economical to produce and less intimidating to the user. The user's position is continuously adjusted throughout the exercise from a slight rearward lean, through an upright position, and ending in a forward lean. This results in involvement of more back muscles than would be involved in a corresponding pulling exercise where the exerciser remained in the same position throughout the exercise. The combined exercise arm and user support movement produces an automatic and continuous self-aligning exercise motion that allows enhanced hand and wrist positioning versus free weight and free bar exercises or prior art machines for performing equivalents of such exercises.

The user support has both a primary user support and a secondary user support which travel together during the exercise movement, and also has an additional user support in the form of a foot plate or foot rests to provide additional stabilization. This helps to maintain a proper exercise position throughout the exercise so that the user feels secure on the moving user support.

The above description of the disclosed embodiments is provided to enable any person skilled in the art to make or use the invention. Various modifications to these embodiments will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art, and the generic principles described herein can be applied to other embodiments without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. Thus, it is to be understood that the description and drawings presented herein represent a presently preferred embodiment of the invention and are therefore representative of the subject matter which is broadly contemplated by the present invention. It is further understood that the scope of the present invention fully encompasses other embodiments that may become obvious to those skilled in the art and that the scope of the present invention is accordingly limited by nothing other than the appended claims.

The invention claimed is:

- 1. A mid-row exercise machine, comprising:
- a floor-engaging main frame having a forward end and a rear end:
- a user support frame pivotally associated with the main frame and movable between a start position and an end position during an exercise, the user support frame moving about a user support pivot axis in one direction between an exercise start position and an exercise end position during an exercise movement;
- the user support frame having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame, and the secondary support being secured at a fixed angular orientation relative to the primary support and not moving relative to the primary support as the user support frame travels between the exercise start and end positions during the exercise movement;
- a user engagement device movably mounted relative to the frames and having at least one hand grip for gripping by a user positioned on the user support, the user engagement device being movable in a mid-row, pulling exercise movement path between a start position in which the hand grip is at a first position spaced in front of at least one of the primary and secondary supports, and an end position spaced rearwardly from the first position closer to said at least one support;

- a connecting linkage which translates pulling movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame; and
- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting link age;
- whereby the combined motion of the user, user support, and user engagement device substantially replicates the natural movement of the upper part of a human body when performing a rowing exercise.
- 2. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user support frame supports a user in a seated position, the primary support comprises a seat pad and the secondary support comprises an upper body engaging pad.
- 3. The machine of claim 2, wherein the secondary support 15 comprises a back pad.
- 4. The machine of claim 2, wherein the secondary support comprises a chest pad.
- 5. The machine of claim 2, wherein the user support frame further comprises an additional support which supports a 20 different part of a user's body from the seat pad and upper body enaging pad.
- **6**. The machine of claim **5**, wherein the additional support comprises a foot support for the user's feet.
- 7. The machine of claim **6**, wherein the foot support is 25 rigidly secured to the user support frame at a predetermined, fixed orientation relative to the primary and secondary supports and not moving relative to the primary and secondary support as the user support frame travels between the start and end positions throughout an exercise.
- **8**. The machine of claim **6**, wherein the foot support is rigidly secured to the main frame in front of the user support frame and at a predetermined, fixed orientation relative to the main frame.
- **9**. The machine of claim **1**, further comprising a single 35 pivot connection pivotally connecting the user support frame to the main frame and located beneath the user support frame.
- 10. The machine of claim 1, further comprising a four-bar pivot system pivotally connecting the user support frame to the main frame.
- 11. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user engagement device is movable in a linear path relative to the frames.
  - 12. A mid-row exercise machine, comprising:
  - a floor-engaging main frame having a forward end and a rear end;
  - a user support frame pivotally associated with the main frame and movable between a start position and an end position during an exercise;
  - the user support frame having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the secondary support being fixed at a predetermined angular orientation relative to the primary support, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame;

    55
  - a user engagement device movably mounted relative to the frames and having at least one hand grip for gripping by a user positioned on the user support, the user engagement device being movable in a mid-row exercise movement path between a start position in which the hand grip 60 is at a first position spaced in front of the chest of a user positioned on the user support, and an end position spaced rearwardly from the first position closer to the user's chest;
  - a connecting linkage which translates movement of the 65 user engagement device to movement of the user support frame:

16

- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage:
- whereby the combined motion of the user, user support, and user engagement device substantially replicates the natural movement of the upper part of a human body when performing a rowing exercise;
- the user engagement device being movable in a linear path relative to the frames and comprising a pair of exercise arms slidably moveable relative to the main frame in diverging linear paths between the start and end positions, each arm having a hand grip for gripping by the user and the hand grips being closer together in the start position than the end position of an exercise.
- 13. The machine of claim 1, wherein the connecting linkage comprises a moving carriage member slidably engaged with the main frame and associated with user support frame.
- 14. The machine of claim 13, wherein the moving carriage member is slidably engaged with both the main frame and the user support frame.
- 15. The machine of claim 13, wherein the connecting linkage further comprises a link member pivotally linking the sliding carriage with the user support frame.
- 16. The machine of claim 13, wherein the user engagement device is secured to the moving carriage member and is slidable with the carriage member relative to the frames.
- 17. The machine of claim 13, wherein the user engagement device is pivotally mounted on the main frame and linked to the moving carriage member.
  - 18. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user engagement device comprises first and second hand grips and first and second arm portions extending from the respective hand grips and associated with at least one of the main frame, user support frame, and connecting linkage, each arm portion being non-rigid along at least part of the length of the arm portion.
- 19. The machine of claim 18, wherein each arm portion has a first, rigid part extending from the respective hand grip, and an elongate flexible part extending from the rigid part to the connecting linkage.
  - 20. A mid-row exercise machine, comprising:
  - a floor-engaging main frame having a forward end and a rear end;
  - a user support frame pivotally associated with the main frame and movable between a start position and an end position during an exercise;
  - the user support frame having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the secondary support being fixed at a predetermined angular orientation relative to the primary support, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame:
  - a user engagement device movably mounted relative to the frames and having at least one hand grip for gripping by a user positioned on the user support, the user engagement device being movable in a mid-row exercise movement path between a start position in which the hand grip is at a first position spaced in front of the chest of a user positioned on the user support, and an end position spaced rearwardly from the first position closer to the user's chest;
  - a connecting linkage which translates movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame:

- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage:
- whereby the combined motion of the user, user support, and user engagement device substantially replicates the 5 natural movement of the upper part of a human body when performing a rowing exercise;
- the user engagement device comprising first and second hand grips and first and second arm portions extending from the respective hand grips and associated with at 10 least one of the main frame, user support frame, and connecting linkage, each arm portion being at least partially non-rigid;
- each arm portion having a first, rigid part extending from the respective hand grip, and a flexible part extending 15 from the rigid part to the connecting linkage; and
- the flexible part comprising at least one cable extending between the rigid parts of the two arm portions and associated with the connecting linkage between the rigid arm parts.
- 21. The machine of claim 1, wherein the hand grip has a first portion rotatable about a first axis and a second, gripping portion rotatable relative to the first portion about a second axis perpendicular to the first axis.
- 22. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user engagement 25 device comprises first and second rigid exercise arms rotatable relative to the frame about a common pivot axis, each exercise arm having a hand grip for gripping by a user positioned on the user support frame.
- 23. The machine of claim 22, wherein the exercise arms are 30 joined to move together in an exercise movement.
- 24. The machine of claim 22, wherein the exercise arms are independently movable.
- **25**. The machine of claim 1, wherein the primary support comprises a seat pad, and the end position of the seat pad is at 35 a different angular orientation relative to the start position.
- **26**. The machine of claim **25**, wherein the seat pad is forwardly inclined in the start position and rotates rearwardly from the forwardly inclined position during an exercise.
- 27. The machine of claim 26, wherein the seat pad is 40 rearwardly reclined in the end position.
- **28**. The machine of claim **25**, wherein the seat pad is rearwardly reclined in the start position and rotates forwardly from the rearwardly reclined start position during an exercise.
- **29**. The machine of claim **28**, wherein the seat pad is in a 45 less rearwardly inclined orientation in the end position than in the start position.
- 30. The machine of claim 28, wherein the seat pad is forwardly inclined in the end position.
- **31**. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user engagement 50 device and user support frame move in opposite directions during an exercise.
- 32. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user engagement device and user support frame move in the same direction during an exercise.
  - 33. A rowing exercise machine, comprising:
  - a floor-engaging main frame having a front end and a rear end:
  - a user support frame;
  - a pivot assembly pivotally mounting the user support frame 60 relative to the main frame and adapted to define a rotation path of the user support frame about the pivot assembly between a start position and an end position of an exercise movement, the pivot assembly having at least one pivot and defining a vertical gravitational center line of the pivotal movement of the user support

18

- the user support frame adapted to support a user in an exercise position facing the front end of the main frame, the user support frame having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame, and the secondary support being secured at a fixed angular orientation relative to the primary support and not moving relative to the primary support as the user support frame travels between the exercise start and end positions during the exercise movement;
- a user engagement device movably mounted in front of at least the primary support of the user support frame for movement relative to one of the frames, the user engagement device having at least one partially rigid portion having a hand grip engaged by the user in performing rowing exercises and adapted to move in an exercise path between exercise start and end positions;
- a connecting linkage which translates movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame; and
- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage.
- 34. The machine of claim 33, wherein the gravitational center line of the user support pivotal motion is positioned such that portions of the combined weight of the user and user support frame are distributed on each side of the gravitational center line of the pivotal motion in at least one of the start and end position and only a portion of the combined weight passes through the gravitational center line during the exercise movement.
- 35. The machine of claim 33, wherein the user support frame has a seat pad which supports a user in a seated position and the gravitational center line extends through the seat pad in at least one of the start and end position of an exercise movement.
- **36**. The machine of claim **33**, wherein the user support frame has a base and a seat pad on the base which supports a user in a seated position, and the gravitational center line extends through the base of the user support frame.
- 37. The machine of claim 33, wherein the user support frame has a base, the primary user support comprises a seat pad on the base which supports a user in a seated position, and the user support pivot assembly is associated with the base of the user support frame.
- **38**. The machine of claim **37**, wherein the main frame has a base and the user support pivot assembly comprises a four bar pivot linkage between the bases of the user support frame and the main frame.
- **39**. The machine of claim **37**, wherein the user support pivot assembly further comprises a pivot mount on the main frame and said pivot comprises a pivot connection between the pivot mount and the base of the user support frame.
- **40**. The machine of claim **33**, wherein the user support frame further comprises an additional support spaced from the primary and secondary supports and supporting a spaced position on a user's body.
- 41. The machine of claim 33, wherein the secondary support comprises a foot support for the user's feet and no part of the foot support is moveable relative to the primary support.
- **42**. The machine of claim **33**, wherein the user engagement device has two partially rigid portions each having a hand grip engaged by the user when performing a rowing exercise.

- 43. A rowing exercise machine, comprising:
- a floor-engaging main frame having a front end and a rear end:
- a user support frame;
- a pivot assembly pivotally mounting the user support frame relative to the main frame for rotation about a user support pivot axis, the pivot assembly adapted to control rotation of the user support frame along an exercise path between a start position and an end position during an exercise movement, the pivot assembly having at least one pivot and defining a vertical gravitational center line of the pivotal movement of the user support frame which extends through the user support pivot axis;
- the user support frame supporting a user in a rowing exercise position facing the front end of the frame and having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame, and the entire secondary support being secured at a fixed angular orientation relative to the primary support and no part of the secondary support moving relative to the primary support as the user support travels between the exercise start and end positions during the exercise movement;
- a user engagement device movably mounted relative to the frames and having at least a first exercise arm having a hand grip engaged by the user positioned on the user support frame when performing a rowing exercise, the exercise arm having a rigid portion extending from the hand grip along at least part of the length of the arm, the user engagement device being movable in a pulling exercise movement path between a start position in which the hand grip is at a first position spaced in front of at least one of the primary and secondary supports, and an end position spaced rearwardly from the first position closer to said at least one support;
- a connecting linkage associated with at least two of the main frame, user support frame, and user engagement 40 device which is adapted to translate a pulling movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame along the exercise path;
- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage; and
- the gravitational center line of the user support pivotal motion being positioned such that portions of the combined weight of the user and user support frame are distributed on each side of the gravitational center line of the pivotal motion in at least one of the start and end position and only a portion of the combined weight passes through the gravitational center line during the exercise movement.
- **44**. The machine of claim **43**, wherein portions of the <sup>55</sup> combined weight of the user and user support frame are distributed on both sides of the gravitational center line in both the start and end position of a rowing exercise.
- **45**. The machine of claim **43**, wherein the exercise arm is rigid along its entire length.
- **46**. The machine of claim **43**, further comprising a second exercise arm having a hand grip engaged by the user and a rigid portion extending from the hand grip along at least part of the length of the second exercise arm.
- 47. The machine of claim 46, wherein the exercise arms are positioned on the opposite sides of the user support frame,

20

and the hand grips move in parallel paths during an exercise movement and are at the same spacing in the start and end positions.

- **48**. The machine of claim **46**, wherein the hand grips move in divergent paths during an exercise movement and are spaced farther apart in the end position than in the start position.
- **49**. The machine of claim **46**, wherein both exercise arms are rigid along their entire length and have lower ends which are connected together and movably mounted relative to the main frame.
- 50. The machine of claim 46, wherein the exercise arms are pivotally mounted on the main frame.
  - 51. A rowing exercise machine, comprising:
- a floor-engaging main frame;
  - a user support frame;
  - a pivot assembly pivotally mounting the user support frame relative to the main frame which allows rotation of the user support frame between a start position and an end position, the pivot assembly having at least one pivot and defining a vertical gravitational center line of the pivotal movement of the user support frame;
  - the user support frame at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the secondary support being fixed at a predetermined angular orientation relative to the primary support, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame;
  - a user engagement device movably mounted relative to the frames and having a first exercise arm having a first hand grip and a second exercise arm having a second hand grip, the first and second hand grips being engaged by the user positioned on the user support when performing a rowing exercise, each exercise arm having a rigid portion extending from the respective hand grip along at least part of the length of the arm;
  - a connecting linkage associated with at least two of the main frame, user support frame, and user engagement device which translates movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame;
  - a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage;
  - the gravitational center line of the user support pivotal motion being positioned such that portions of the combined weight of the user and user support frame are distributed on each side of the gravitational center line of the pivotal motion in at least one of the start and end position and only a portion of the combined weight passes through the gravitational center line during the exercise movement; and
  - the exercise arms being slidably mounted for linear motion relative to the main frame.
- **52**. The machine of claim **46**, further comprising a flexible member linking the exercise arms and associated with at least one of the main frame and connecting linkage.
- **53**. The machine of claim **43**, wherein the hand grip is at a lower elevation relative to the user support frame in the end position than in the start position of an exercise.
  - **54**. A rowing exercise machine, comprising:
  - a floor-engaging main frame having a front end and a rear end:
  - a user support frame;
  - a pivot assembly pivotally mounting the user support frame relative to the main frame and adapted to define a rotation path of the user support frame about the pivot

assembly between a start position and an end position of an exercise movement, the pivot assembly having at least one pivot and defining a vertical gravitational center line of the pivotal movement of the user support frame;

the user support frame adapted to support a user in an exercise position facing the front end of the main frame, the user support frame having at least a primary support and a secondary support for supporting spaced positions on a user's body throughout an exercise movement, the primary support supporting the majority of a user's weight in the start position of the support frame, and the secondary support comprising a foot support which is secured at a fixed angular orientation relative to the primary support whereby no part of the foot support is movable relative to the primary support as the user support frame travels between the exercise start and end positions during the exercise movement;

22

- a user engagement device movably mounted relative to one of the frames, the user engagement device having at least one partially rigid portion having a hand grip engaged by the user in performing rowing exercises and adapted to move in an exercise path between exercise start and end positions;
- a connecting linkage which translates movement of the user engagement device to movement of the user support frame; and
- a load for resisting movement of at least one of the user support, user engagement device, and connecting linkage.
- 55. The machine of claim 1, wherein the user support frame supports a user in a seated position, the primary support comprises a seat pad and the secondary support comprises a lower body engaging pad.
  - **56**. The machine of claim **55**, wherein the lower body engaging pad comprises a foot support for the user's feet.

\* \* \* \* \*

# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 7,766,802 B2 Page 1 of 1

APPLICATION NO.: 12/105833 DATED: August 3, 2010

INVENTOR(S) : Randall T. Webber et al.

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 20, line 23, after "user support frame" insert --having--.

Signed and Sealed this

Twelfth Day of October, 2010

David J. Kappos Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

## Hnited States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit IN RE RAYMOND GIANNELLI, No. 2013-1167 CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE

I, Robyn Cocho, being duly sworn according to law and being over the age of 18, upon my oath depose and say that:

Counsel Press was retained by NOVAK, DRUCE, CONNOLLY, BOVE & QUIGG LLP, Attorneys for Appellant to print this document. I am an employee of Counsel Press.

On **July 5, 2013**, Counsel for Appellant has authorized me to electronically file the foregoing **Joint Appendix** with the Clerk of Court using the CM/ECF System, which will serve via e-mail notice of such filing to any of the following counsel registered as CM/ECF users:

NATHAN K. KELLEY Nathan.kelley@uspto.gov AMY J. NELSON amy.nelson@uspto.gov UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE Office of the Solicitor P.O. Box 1450, Mail Stop 8 Alexandria, VA 22213-1450 (571) 272-9035 JEREMIAH HELM Jeremiah.Helm@uspto.gov Patent and Trademark Office Law Office 600 Dulany Street Alexandria, VA 22214 (571) 272-5059

## Counsel for Appellee

Upon acceptance by the Court of the e-filed document, six paper copies will filed with the Court, via Federal Express, within the time provided in the Court's rules.

July 5, 2013

/s/Robyn Cocho

Counsel Press